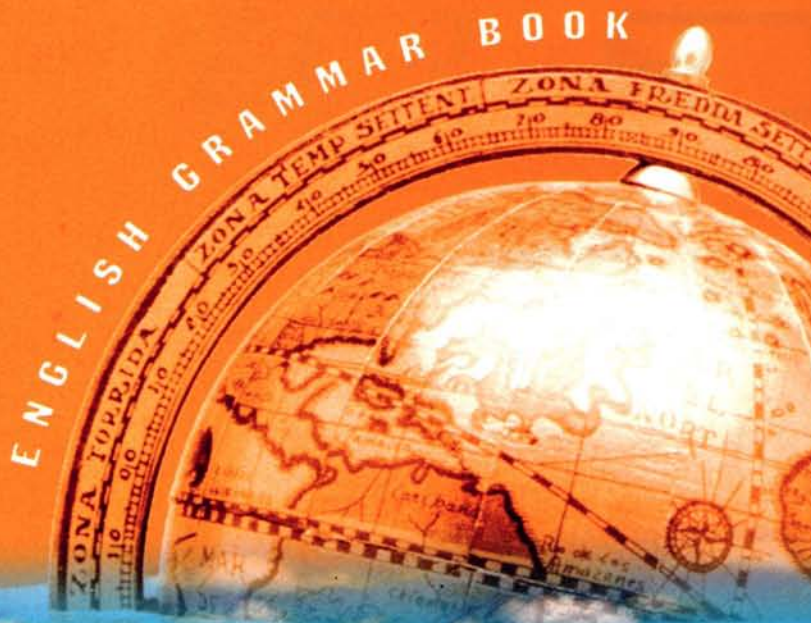


2



Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans

# Grammarway

Практическое пособие по грамматике английского языка  
Под редакцией профессора О.В. Афанасьевой



Express Publishing

CenterCom

ЦентрКом

Дженни Дули, Вирджиния Эванс

# Grammarway 2

Практическое пособие по грамматике  
английского языка

*Перевод с английского доцента Г.И. Бардиной  
Под редакцией профессора О.В. Афанасьевой*



**Express Publishing**

**CenterCom**

Москва  
ЦентрКом  
2000



**Published in 1998 by Express Publishing**

**9, Mac Millan Street, Athens 111 44, Greece**

**Tel: (301)2013477 - Fax: (301)2015444**

**e-mail: [expressp@compulink.gr](mailto:expressp@compulink.gr)**

© Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans

Design & Illustration © Express Publishing

Colour Illustrations: Tasso Sinerli

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN

960 - 361 - 164 - 6

# Содержание

Предисловие редактора перевода .....	4
Введение .....	5
Unit 1 Настоящее продолженное время – Настоящее простое время .....	6
Unit 2 Прошедшее простое время и конструкция “Used to” .....	14
Unit 3 Прошедшее продолженное время .....	20
Unit 4 Настоящее совершенное время .....	26
Unit 5 Способы выражения будущего .....	32
<b>Повторение 1 (Units 1 – 5) .....</b>	<b>38</b>
Unit 6 Определительные придаточные предложения .....	40
Unit 7 Настоящее совершенное продолженное время .....	46
Unit 8 Местоимения. Both/Neither – All/None. Выражение принадлежности .....	52
Unit 9 Модальные глаголы I .....	60
Unit 10 Инфинитив и “-ing”-форма. Too/Enough .....	66
<b>Повторение 2 (Units 1 – 10) .....</b>	<b>72</b>
Unit 11 Прошедшее совершенное время – Прошедшее совершенное продолженное время .....	74
Unit 12 Модальные глаголы II .....	80
Unit 13 Страдательный залог .....	86
Unit 14 Косвенная речь .....	92
Unit 15 Условные предложения. Выражение желания .....	100
<b>Повторение 3 (Units 1 – 15) .....</b>	<b>108</b>
Unit 16 Прилагательные и наречия. Сравнения .....	110
Unit 17 Существительные и артикли .....	118
Unit 18 Употребление “Some/Any/No – A lot of/Much/Many – (A) little/(A) few” .....	126
Unit 19 Вопросы .....	132
Unit 20 Предлоги и союзные слова .....	140
<b>Повторение 4 (Units 1 – 20) .....</b>	<b>148</b>
Неправильные глаголы .....	152
Словарь .....	153
Ответы к упражнениям .....	159



# Introduction

**Grammarway 2** is the second book in a four-level grammar series presented in full colour. The book is designed for learners of the English language at post-elementary level, and can be used for self-study or in the classroom as a supplement to any course at this level.

The aim of the book is to help learners understand English grammar structures through comprehensive theory tables and functional examples, accompanied by a wealth of attractive photographs and illustrations.

The book consists of **20 units**, each focusing on a particular grammar topic.

A typical unit contains:

- presentation of the grammar structure by means of visual prompts
- simple, concise explanation of the grammar structure
- examples in everyday conversational English, together with a few expressions showing slightly more formal use
- exercises practising the new structures, to help learners use appropriate patterns in everyday situations
- speaking and writing activities to practise the new structures in oral and written form
- a revision box in each unit

A **revision unit** follows every five units to consolidate material presented in previous units.

The **Picture Flashcards** which accompany the book can be used for lively, motivating presentation of the target grammar structures.

The book adheres to the principle that every structure should first be heard, then practised in oral, and finally, in written form. Based on the use of full-colour visual stimuli, the book encourages learners to speak before writing, and allows them to practise English structures through a variety of enjoyable and useful activities.

The Student's Book is accompanied by a **Teacher's Book** containing:

- guidance on presenting the theory of each unit, with or without Picture Flashcards
- a full key to the exercises in the Student's Book
- four tests with two different versions of each test

## Thanks

The authors would like to thank Rania Dunn, Anna Miller, Laura Houston, Jonathan Harrison and Steven Davies for their help in producing this book. Many thanks to E. Mavragani (art director) and V. Sipsi (assistant director). We would also like to thank those institutions and teachers who piloted the manuscript, and whose comments and feedback were invaluable in the production of the book.



## Present Continuous - Present Simple

### Настоящее продолженное время



Bob and Claire **aren't working** today. They're on holiday. They're **having** a nice time. What **is Bob doing** now? He **is taking** a picture of Claire.

Настоящее продолженное время (present continuous\*) образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола **to be** и смыслового глагола, к которому добавляется **-ing**.

\* Употребляется также термин present progressive.

#### Утверждение

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	am	'm	} reading.
He/She/It	is	's	
You/We/They	are	're	

#### Вопрос

Am	I	} reading?
Is	he/she/it	
Are	you/we/they	

#### Отрицание

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	am not	'm not	} reading.
He/She/It	is not	isn't	
You/We/They	are not	aren't	

### Правописание

- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **-е**, обычно опускается **-е** и прибавляется **-ing**.  
dance - **dancing**    NO    agree - **agreeing**
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **ударный слог с кратким гласным** между двумя согласными, конечная согласная буква удваивается и прибавляется **-ing**.  
refer - **referring**      run - **running**  
get - **getting**    NO    open - **opening**
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **-l**, эта буква **l** удваивается и прибавляется **-ing**.  
travel - **travelling**
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **-ie**, опускается **-ie** и прибавляется **-y + -ing**.  
lie - **lying**    die - **dying**

### 1 Add -ing to the verbs and put them in the correct boxes.

talk, dive, swim, shop, lie, study, mend, write, try, take, cook, stop, sleep, die, sit

+ ing

~~ie~~ = y + ing

talking

~~g~~ = ing

двойная согласная + ing

### 2 Fill in the gaps with the present continuous.

- We ..... *are're tidying* ..... (tidy) the garden.
- I ..... (not/do) my homework.
- ..... (Dad/paint) the living-room?
- He ..... (run).
- The girls ..... (play) with their dolls.
- John ..... (study) at university.
- Helen and I ..... (make) dinner.
- ..... (you/listen) to the radio?



## Употребление

Present continuous употребляется для выражения:

- действий, происходящих в момент речи,

*He is reading a book right now.*



- временных действий, происходящих в настоящий период времени, но не обязательно в момент речи,

*She is practising for a concert these days. (В данный момент она не играет. Она отдыхает.)*



- действий, происходящих слишком часто и по поводу которых мы хотим высказать раздражение или критику (обычно со словом "always"),

*"You're always interrupting me!" (раздражение)*



- действий, заранее запланированных на будущее.

*He is flying to Milan in an hour. (Это запланировано.)*



## Маркеры\* (Time Expressions)

Здесь и далее маркерами мы называем наречия и словосочетания, обозначающие время действия и чаще всего употребляющиеся с определенной временной формой глагола. Маркерами present continuous являются: *now, at the moment, these days, at present, always, tonight, still* и т.д.

\* В русскоязычной учебной литературе употребляются также термины "Сигналы" и "Указатели времени".

3

Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.



Four people 1) *...are sitting...* (sit) at a table. They are in a restaurant. They 2) ..... (have) dinner. They 3) ..... (wear) smart clothes. The man 4) ..... (wear) a suit. The parents 5) ..... (smile) at each other and they 6) ..... (talk). The children 7) ..... (listen). The girl 8) ..... (drink) some wine. The boy 9) ..... (eat) some bread. They 10) ..... (enjoy) their meal.

## Краткие ответы

Краткие ответы строятся с помощью *Yes* или *No*, личного местоимения в именительном падеже и вспомогательного глагола *is/are*, и *isn't/aren't* и *am/am not*. Содержание вопроса не повторяется.

Are you leaving?	Yes, I am/we are.	No, I'm not/we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is.	No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

4

Look at the picture in ex. 3 again. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- the parents / wear / sports clothes?  
SA: *Are the parents wearing sports clothes?*  
SB: *No, they aren't. They're wearing smart clothes.*
- the four people / have / dinner?
- the children / talk?
- the girl / drink / some juice?
- the boy / eat / some ice-cream?



Настоящее простое время



Richard Taylor and Sarah Perkins **work** in the same office. What time **do they start** work? Sarah **arrives** at work at 9 o'clock but Richard **doesn't get** to the office until 10 o'clock.

Настоящее простое время (present simple\*) образуется с помощью **подлежащего** (существительного или местоимения в именительном падеже) и **смыслового глагола**. В утверждениях к смысловому глаголу в 3-м лице единственного числа обычно прибавляется окончание **-s**. В вопросах и отрицаниях с местоимениями I, you, we, they используется вспомогательный глагол **do / don't**, а с местоимениями he, she, it – **does / doesn't**. Если смысловой глагол употребляется с **does / doesn't**, окончание **-s** к нему не прибавляется.

\* Иногда употребляется термин present indefinite.

Утверждение

I/You/We/They read.  
He/She/It reads.

Вопрос

Do I/you/we/they } read?  
Does he/she/it }

Отрицание

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I/You/We/They do not      don't } read.  
He/She/It does not      doesn't }

Правописание

- ◆ Большая часть глаголов в 3-м лице единственного числа приобретает окончание **-s**.  
*I read - he reads*
- ◆ К глаголам, оканчивающимся на **-ss, -sh, -ch, -x** и **-o**, прибавляется **-es**.  
*I kiss - he kisses, I brush - he brushes, I teach - he teaches, I fix - he fixes, I go - he goes*
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **согласный + y**, опускается **y** и прибавляется **-ies**.  
*I try - he tries, I fly - he flies*
- ◆ К глаголам, оканчивающимся на **гласный + y**, прибавляется окончание **-s**.  
*I buy - he buys*

5

Write the third person singular of the verbs in the list in the correct box.

dance, finish, study, open, mix, pray, put, miss, like, dry, do, catch, wash, say, cry, copy, watch, play, pass, begin

-s	-es	-ies
dances	finishes	studies
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

6

Fill in the gaps with the present simple.

- 1 A: Where ..... *is* ..... (be) Jack?  
B: At school.
- 2 A: ..... (you/come) here very often?  
B: Yes, every evening.
- 3 A: I ..... (play) tennis in the summer.  
B: Really? So do I!
- 4 A: We ..... (leave) the house at 6:30 every morning.  
B: That's very early.
- 5 A: Sam ..... (not/know) anything about the party.  
B: I know. It's a surprise.



## Произношение

Окончания глаголов 3-го лица единственного числа произносятся как:

- ◆ / s /, если глагол оканчивается на звуки / f /, / k /, / p / или / t /,  
*laughs, drinks, sleeps, hates*
- ◆ / ɪz /, если глагол оканчивается на звуки / s /, / ʃ /, / tʃ / или / z /,  
*misses, wishes, matches, arranges, rises*
- ◆ / z /, если глагол оканчивается на другие звуки.  
*dreams, stays, begins, stands, saves*

## 7

Write the third person singular of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.

*laugh, kiss, read, look, speak, kick, put, catch, drive, brush, ride, walk, open, jump, play, know, cough, see, dance, close, help, listen, watch, wash, travel, write, lose, eat, rain, change*

/ s /	<i>laughs,</i>
/ ɪz /	<i>kisses,</i>
/ z /	<i>reads,</i>



## Употребление

Present simple употребляется для выражения:

- ◆ постоянных состояний,
- ◆ повторяющихся и повседневных действий (часто со следующими наречиями: *always, never, usually* и т.д.),



*Mr Gibson is a businessman. He lives in New York. (постоянное состояние)*  
*He usually starts work at 9 am. (повседневное действие)*  
*He often stays at the office until late in the evening. (повседневное действие)*

- ◆ непреложных истин и законов природы,

*The moon moves round the earth.*



- ◆ действий, происходящих по программе или по расписанию (движение поездов, автобусов и т.д.).

*The bus leaves in ten minutes.*



## Маркеры

Маркерами present simple являются: *usually, always* и т.п., *every day / week / month / year* и т.д., *on Mondays / Tuesdays* и т.д., *in the morning / afternoon / evening, at night / the weekend* и т.д.

## 8

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present continuous or the present simple.

- 1 A: Where's James?  
B: He *isn't playing*. (play) football in the garden right now.
- 2 A: Bill ..... (dance) very well.  
B: Yes, he's a good singer, too.
- 3 A: Lucy is very busy.  
B: Yes. She ..... (work) very hard these days.
- 4 A: What ..... (you/do) on Saturdays?  
B: I clean the house and go shopping.
- 5 A: Why ..... (you/pack) your suitcase?  
B: Because I ..... (fly) to Paris tomorrow morning.
- 6 A: Fred ..... (not/know) how to swim.  
B: That's because he's only three.
- 7 A: Max looks very fit.  
B: Yes. He ..... (take) a lot of exercise these days.



**Наречия частоты\***  
(Adverbs of Frequency)

◆ С формой present simple нередко употребляются наречия частоты. Они показывают, как часто что-то происходит, и отвечают на вопрос: **How often...?**

Например: *How often do you visit your aunt?*  
*I always/usually/sometimes visit her on Sundays.*

**Наречия частоты\*\***

always	100%
usually	75%
often	50%
sometimes	25%
rarely/seldom	10%
never	0%

\*\* Указанные числа носят лишь иллюстративный характер.

◆ Наречия частоты употребляются перед смысловым глаголом (*visit, drink* и т.д.), но после глагола *to be*, вспомогательных и модальных глаголов (*can, do, must* и т.д.).

Например: *Peter often visits his grandparents at the weekend. Sharon never drinks coffee.*

*Jim is always on time for work.*

*Bob can never wake up early in the morning.*

*Do you often go to the cinema at the weekend?*

*Paul doesn't usually eat out on Sundays.*

◆ Наречия **rarely, seldom** и **never** имеют отрицательное значение и никогда не употребляются со словом **not**. Например: *He rarely goes to the cinema. I never take sugar in my coffee.*

\* Общепринятый русскоязычный термин отсутствует. Эти наречия относятся к наречиям неопределенного времени.

9

**Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.**

- You must brush your teeth twice a day. (always)  
*You must always brush your teeth twice a day.*
- Is he on time for work? (always)  
.....
- Karen has cereal for breakfast. (sometimes)  
.....
- Paul doesn't listen to music in the evening. (usually)  
.....
- The children help with the housework. (rarely)  
.....
- Must you play your music so loud? (always)  
.....
- Sheila can park her car properly. (never)  
.....

10

**Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.**

Charlie Foster 1) *...works...* (work) at a bakery. He 2) ..... (always/get up) very early because he 3) ..... (start) work at four o'clock every morning. Charlie 4) ..... (not/be) at work this morning. At the moment he 5) ..... (pack) a suitcase because he 6) ..... (go) on holiday today. Charlie 7) ..... (sing) to himself. He's very happy. Right now he 8) ..... (look for) his aeroplane tickets. Where are they? He can't find them. There they are; under his bed! Charlie 9) ..... (call) a taxi now. His plane 10) ..... (leave) in an hour. Where 11) ..... (Charlie/go)? To Hawaii!

**Краткие ответы**

Do you get up early?	Yes, I/we do.	No, I/we don't.
Does he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it does.	No, he/she/it doesn't.
Do they ...?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.

**Примечание.** В кратких ответах наречия частоты употребляются перед вспомогательным глаголом. Например: *Do you watch horror films on TV?*  
*Yes, I often do. / No, I never do.*

11

**Look at the text in ex. 10 again, then, in pairs, ask and answer questions about Charlie Foster, as in the examples.**

- Charlie / work / at a bank?  
SA: *Does Charlie work at a bank?*  
SB: *No, he doesn't. He works at a bakery.*
- Charlie / pack / a suitcase / at the moment?  
SA: *Is Charlie packing a suitcase at the moment?*  
SB: *Yes, he is.*
- Charlie / start work / at 4 o'clock every morning?
- Charlie / go on holiday / next week?
- Charlie / sing to himself?
- Charlie / look for his tickets / right now?
- the plane / leave / in an hour?
- Charlie / go / Tahiti?



Сопоставление Present Simple и Present Continuous

Present Simple

- Present simple употребляется для выражения постоянных состояний, повторяющихся и повседневных действий.



Claire Bryan **works** as a secretary. She **starts** work at eight o'clock every day. She **types** Mr Moore's letters.

Present Continuous

- Present continuous употребляется для выражения временных действий, происходящих в момент речи или в настоящий период времени.



It's nine o'clock. Claire is **still** at home because she is **ill**. She **is wearing** her pyjamas and she **is sitting** on her bed. She **isn't working** today.

12 Look at the pictures and write sentences, as in the examples.



- 1 taxi driver / drive a taxi / wash the taxi

What does the taxi driver do?  
 He drives a taxi.  
 Is he driving a taxi now?  
 No, he isn't. He's washing the taxi.

- 2 nurse / look after patients / read a book

- 3 maid / clean the house / talk on the phone

- 4 vet / treat animals / listen to music

- 5 mechanic / repair cars / eat a sandwich

- 6 waiter / serve customers / read a newspaper



Present Continuous - Present Simple

Глаголы, не имеющие форм группы Continuous

Во временах группы Continuous обычно не употребляются глаголы:

- ◆ выражающие восприятия, ощущения (see, hear, feel, taste, smell),  
Например: *This cake tastes delicious.*  
(Но не: ~~This cake is tasting delicious.~~)
- ◆ выражающие мыслительную деятельность [know, think, remember, forget, recognise(ze), believe, understand, notice, realise(ze), seem, sound и др.],  
Например: *I don't know his name.*
- ◆ выражающие эмоции, желания (love, prefer, like, hate, dislike, want и др.),  
Например: *Shirley loves jazz music.*
- ◆ include, matter, need, belong, cost, mean, own, appear, have (когда выражает принадлежность) и т.д.  
Например: *That jacket costs a lot of money.*  
(Но не: ~~That jacket is costing a lot of money.~~)

**13** Read the following dialogue between a hotel owner and the receptionist. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.



- A: Good morning, Catherine. A special guest 1) *...is coming...* (come) to our hotel today.  
 B: Really! 2) ..... (I/know) who it is?  
 A: I 3) ..... (think) you do. He 4) ..... (star) in the TV series, "Rooftop", at the moment.  
 B: It 5) ..... (be) Paul Roberts, isn't it? When 6) ..... (he/come)? I can't wait to meet him in person!  
 A: At 3 o'clock this afternoon. But there are a few things you 7) ..... (need) to know. First of all, he 8) ..... (love) flowers. He also 9) ..... (enjoy) having his breakfast in the dining-room, not in his room.  
 B: Why 10) ..... (he/stay) at our hotel?  
 A: Because he 11) ..... (want) some peace and quiet and he 12) ..... (not/like) to be disturbed by reporters.  
 B: I see. Well, let's hope that everything will be okay while he 13) ..... (stay) here.

**14** Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

- 1 Jason *...is not coming...* (not/come) with us this evening.
- 2 What ..... (this sign/mean)?
- 3 We ..... (usually/meet) at the sports centre every Wednesday afternoon.
- 4 Greg ..... (train) for the next Olympic Games.
- 5 Michael Burns is very rich. He ..... (own) a department store.
- 6 John and Mary ..... (play) chess at the moment.
- 7 Peter ..... (not/usually/have) bacon and eggs for breakfast.
- 8 My father ..... (buy) a newspaper every day.
- 9 Mr and Mrs Dean ..... (not/go) to Mexico tomorrow.
- 10 "..... (Pierre/speak) English?"  
"No, but he ..... (speak) French."

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.



Dear Martin,

How are you and Sally?  
 I 1) *...hope...* (hope) you're well. I 2) .....  
 ..... (write) to give you some good news. I have got a summer job for the holidays! I 3) .....  
 ..... (repair) telephone lines for a telephone company.  
 I 4) ..... (usually/ride) my bicycle to work because it's only a ten minute ride from home. We 5) ..... (start) work at 8:30. We 6) ..... (finish) at 4:30 on Mondays to Thursdays, but at 2:30 on Fridays, so I 7) ..... (have) long weekends.  
 I 8) ..... (work) very hard at the moment. To tell you the truth, I 9) ..... (be) a bit nervous because my boss 10) ..... (leave) for Scotland on business next week, so I'll be on my own. Lizzie says I 11) ..... (worry) about it too much. She's probably right!  
 Please write with your news. Say hello to Sally for me.

Best wishes,  
 Richard



**16** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Steve goes fishing tomorrow.
- 2 Rebecca wash her hair every day.
- 3 I am visiting my grandparents every week.
- 4 Tim doesn't wants to do his homework.
- 5 He sits on the floor at the moment.
- 6 Do you watch TV in the evenings always?
- 7 Sarah is drinking coffee every morning.
- 8 They don't go usually on holiday in May.
- 9 Does she work late? No, she does never.
- 10 Peter looks for a new house at the moment.

**17** Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the present simple or present continuous.

cost, leave, be, snow, like



**ORAL**  
Activity

Look at picture A and say what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday morning, as in the example. Then, look at picture B and say what they are doing this Saturday morning.



e.g. Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper.



e.g. Mr Henderson is taking pictures.

**WRITING**  
Activity

Look at the Oral Activity and write about what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday mornings and what they are doing this Saturday morning. Start like this:

On Saturday mornings Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper. Mrs Henderson .....

This Saturday morning the Hendersons are in the countryside. Mr Henderson is taking pictures. Mrs Henderson .....



# UNIT 2

## Past Simple - Used to

### Прошедшее простое время (Правильные глаголы)



Last summer, Julie and Brian **visited** Australia. They **stayed** at a lovely hotel in Sydney. They **visited** the Sydney Opera House and they **walked** across the Sydney Harbour Bridge. **Did they enjoy** themselves? Yes, they **did**.

Past simple **правильных глаголов** образуется путем прибавления **-ed** к смысловому глаголу. Например: She **watched** TV last night.

Вопросы и отрицания строятся с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did / did not (didn't)** и смыслового глагола без **-ed**.

Например: **Did she watch** TV last night?  
She **did not/didn't watch** TV last night.

#### Утверждение

I	}	finished.
He/She/It You/We/They		

#### Вопрос

Did	}	finish?
I he/she/it you/we/they		

#### Отрицание

	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
--	--------------	---------------	--

I	}	finish.
He/She/It You/We/They		

### Правописание

- ◆ К глаголам, оканчивающимся на **-e**, прибавляется только **-d**. *dance - danced*
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **согласную + y**, опускается **y** и прибавляется **-ied**. *try - tried*
- ◆ К глаголам, оканчивающимся на **гласную + y**, прибавляется **-ed**. *play - played, stay - stayed*
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **ударный слог с кратким гласным** между двумя согласными, конечная согласная буква удваивается и прибавляется **-ed**.  
*plan - planned* **НО** *open - opened*
- ◆ В глаголах, оканчивающихся на **-l**, эта буква **l** удваивается и прибавляется **-ed**.  
*travel - travelled, quarrel - quarrelled*

1

**Write the past simple of the verbs in the list in the correct box.**

*laugh, study, travel, pray, stop, close, cry, rob, call, love, tidy, dance, miss, drop, phone, enjoy, try, live, refer, look, carry*

+ ed

+ d

*laughed*

~~-x~~ = ied

двойная согласная  
+ ed

2

**Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.**

- 1 Olivia's room is clean now. (clean it/an hour ago)  
*She cleaned it an hour ago.*
- 2 Helen isn't watching TV. (turn it off/half an hour ago)
- 3 Steve doesn't go to the gym any more. (stop/six months ago)
- 4 Mary is eating the cake. (bake it/half an hour ago)
- 5 Kim is having a party today. (arrange it/two weeks ago)
- 6 Rob doesn't live here any more. (move/three days ago)
- 7 Peter's house is tidy. (tidy it/two hours ago)



## Произношение

Окончание -ed произносится как:

- ◆ / **ɪd** /, если глаголы оканчиваются на звуки / t / или / d /, *posted, succeeded*
- ◆ / **t** /, если глаголы оканчиваются на звуки / k /, / s /, / tʃ /, / ʃ /, / f / или / p /, *cooked, kissed, touched, wished, laughed, stepped*
- ◆ / **d** /, если глаголы оканчиваются на другие звуки. *arrived, prepared, showed, robbed*

### 3 Write the past simple of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.

want, open, wash, work, arrest, help, carry, visit, cook, clean, need, finish, load, live, watch, accept, laugh, stay, pass, type, persuade, arrange, rub

/ id / *wanted*

/ t /

/ d /

### 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.

- 1 A: Sorry Mum, but I ...*dropped*... (drop) the glass on the floor.  
B: Never mind. Just be careful next time.
- 2 A: ..... (you/watch) the horror film last night?  
B: Yes, but I ..... (not/enjoy) it.
- 3 A: ..... (your neighbours/move) house yesterday?  
B: Yes, we ..... (help) them move their boxes.
- 4 A: A train ..... (crash) last night.  
B: I know. Luckily, all the passengers ..... (survive).
- 5 A: Susan ..... (not/play) tennis yesterday.  
B: I know. She's playing today instead.
- 6 A: ..... (you/see) Kate yesterday?  
B: Yes. We ..... (have) lunch together.

## Прошедшее простое время (Неправильные глаголы)



Julie and Brian **went** swimming every day. They **saw** some kangaroos, but they **didn't** see any crocodiles. They **had** a lot of fun.

Past simple **неправильных глаголов** образуется не путем прибавления -ed, а другими способами. Например: *leave-left, cut-cut, swim-swam* (Смотрите список неправильных глаголов на странице 152.) Вопросы и отрицания строятся с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did / did not (didn't)** и корневой (основной) формы смыслового глагола. Например: *They left. - Did they leave? - They didn't leave.*

### Утверждение

I  
He/She/It  
You/We/They } **left.**

### Вопрос

**Did** I  
he/she/it  
you/we/they } **leave?**

### Отрицание

	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I He/She/It You/We/They	<b>did not</b>	<b>didn't</b>	} <b>leave.</b>

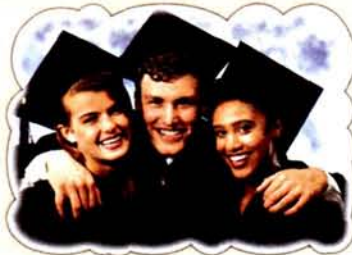


Употребление

Past simple употребляется для выражения:

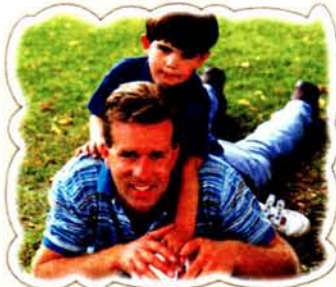
- действий, произошедших в прошлом в определенное указанное время, то есть нам известно, **когда** эти действия произошли,

They graduated four years ago.  
(Когда они закончили университет? Четыре года назад. Мы знаем время.)



- повторяющихся в прошлом действий, которые более не происходят. В этом случае могут использоваться наречия частоты (*always, often, usually* и т.д.),

He often played football with his dad when he was five.  
(Но теперь он уже не играет в футбол со своим отцом.)



- действий, следовавших непосредственно одно за другим в прошлом.



They cooked the meal first.



Then they ate with their friends.

- Past simple употребляется также, когда речь идет о людях, которых уже нет в живых.

Princess Diana visited a lot of schools.



Маркеры

Маркерами past simple являются: *yesterday, last night / week / month / year / Monday* и т.д., *two days / weeks / months / years ago, then, when, in 1992* и т.д.

**5** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple. What use of the past simple does each sentence show?

- Mother ...*cleaned*... (clean) the windows twice last week. (*definite/stated time*)
- They ..... (not/go) on holiday to Spain last year.
- Tina ..... (not/sing) in the school concert yesterday.
- Paul often ..... (fight) with his brother when they were young.
- Mother Teresa ..... (help) the poor people of India.
- Her sister ..... (bake) this beautiful cake on Monday.
- ..... (Sam/enjoy) his trip to Wales last weekend?
- John ..... (fall) and ..... (hurt) his knee.

**6** Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

- A Lesley 1) ...*bought*... (buy) her house two months ago. It is a beautiful cottage in the countryside. However, when Lesley 2) ..... (decide) to buy it, it 3) ..... (need) a lot of work. First, she 4) ..... (decorate) all the rooms. Then, she 5) ..... (plant) lots of flowers in the garden. After that, she 6) ..... (make) new curtains for all the windows. When it was ready, she 7) ..... (move) in. That was last week. Now, Lesley is very happy.
- B Claude Monet 1) ...*was*... (be) a famous artist. He 2) ..... (paint) lots of beautiful pictures in his lifetime. He often 3) ..... (take) his paints and a canvas into the countryside. He 4) ..... (love) to paint trees and rivers during the different seasons of the year. Monet 5) ..... (create) a new kind of art called Impressionism. He 6) ..... (die) in 1926, but many people still visit museums and galleries to look at his pictures.



Краткие ответы

Пример: Did you buy a gift for your mother? Yes, I did.

Did you ...?	Yes, I/we did.	No, I/we didn't.
Did he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it did.	No, he/she/it didn't.
Did they ...?	Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

Ferdinand Magellan 1) ...*was*... (be) a Portuguese sailor who 2) ..... (want) to sail around the world. Emperor Charles V of Spain 3) ..... (give) him five ships and two hundred and sixty-five Spanish sailors. They 4) ..... (leave) Spain on 20th September, 1519 and 5) ..... (begin) their long and dangerous journey.

On the journey, Magellan 6) ..... (discover) the Pacific Ocean. Unfortunately, he and many of the sailors 7) ..... (die) in a battle on 27th April, 1521. After that, a Spanish sailor 8) ..... (take) control of the ships and 9) ..... (set off) to complete the voyage. Only one ship and sixteen men 10) ..... (survive) the journey. They 11) ..... (arrive) back in Spain on 6th September, 1522. They 12) ..... (be) the first men to sail around the world.

8 Read the text in ex. 7 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples.

- Ferdinand Magellan / be / a Portuguese sailor?  
SA: *Was Ferdinand Magellan a Portuguese sailor?*  
SB: *Yes, he was.*
- the Emperor of Spain / give him / fifteen ships?  
SA: *Did the Emperor of Spain give him fifteen ships?*  
SB: *No, he didn't. He gave him five ships.*
- they / leave / Spain / 1619?
- the journey / be / long and dangerous?
- Magellan / discover / the Pacific Ocean?
- Magellan / die / with soldiers / in battle?
- a Spanish sailor / complete / voyage?
- the remaining ship / reach / Spain / 1523?

9

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.



- A: What 1) .....*did you do*..... (you/do) last summer?  
 B: I 2) ..... (work) in a fast food restaurant.  
 A: What kind of work 3) ..... (you/do)?  
 B: I 4) ..... (take) orders from customers.  
 A: 5) ..... (you/earn) much money?  
 B: Yes, but I 6) ..... (spend) most of it.  
 A: What 7) ..... (you/spend) it on?  
 B: I 8) ..... (go) on holiday to the Greek islands.  
 A: 9) ..... (you/have) a good time?  
 B: Yes, it 10) ..... (be) wonderful!

10

You have just come back from a holiday. Your friend is asking you some questions. Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions giving your own answers.

- where / go?  
SA: *Where did you go?*  
SB: *I went to Spain.*
- who / go with?  
.....
- have / a good time?  
.....
- stay / at a camp-site?  
.....
- the weather / good?  
.....
- what / do every day?  
.....
- eat / at restaurants?  
.....
- go / the beach?  
.....



Used to



People **used to dress** differently in the past. Women **used to wear** long dresses. **Did they use to carry** parasols with them? Yes, they did. They **didn't use to go** out alone at night.

◆ **Used to** (+ основная форма глагола) употребляется для выражения привычных, повторявшихся в прошлом действий, которые сейчас уже не происходят. Эта конструкция не изменяется по лицам и числам.

Например: Peter **used to eat** a lot of sweets. (= Peter doesn't eat many sweets any more.)

Вопросы и отрицания строятся с помощью **did / did not (didn't)**, подлежащего и глагола "use" без -d.\*

Например: **Did Peter use to eat** many sweets? Mary **didn't use to stay** out late.

◆ Вместо "used to" можно употреблять **past simple**, при этом смысл высказывания не изменяется.

Например: She **used to live** in the countryside. = She **lived** in the countryside.

\* Отрицательные и вопросительные формы употребляются редко.

Утверждение

I  
He/She/It  
You/We/They } **used to**  
travel.

Вопрос

**Did** I  
he/she/it  
you/we/they } **use to**  
travel?

Отрицание

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I  
He/She/It  
You/We/They } **did not**      **didn't** } **use to**  
travel.

11

Peter Gordon won a lot of money on the lottery last year. Look at the pictures and say what Peter used to do and what he does now.

e.g. Peter used to live in a small house, but now he lives in a big house.

LAST YEAR	NOW
1  live/small house	live/big house
2  go to work/by bus	go to work/by car
3  eat/at home	eat out
4  watch/TV	go/the theatre
5  spend/his holidays/at a camp-site	spend/his holidays/travelling

12

Complete the sentences with the correct form of used to and the verb in brackets.

- I ...*didn't use to watch*... (not/watch) the news, but now I watch it every day.
- My aunt ..... (drink) a lot of coffee, but now she prefers to drink tea.
- We ..... (live) in a flat, but we live in a big house now.
- ..... (you/go) to school on foot?
- We ..... (not/like) each other, but now we're good friends.
- I ..... (not/eat) vegetables. Now I eat them every day.
- My sister ..... (play) the piano, but now she doesn't.
- They..... (spend) their weekends in the countryside. They don't any more.



## Краткие ответы

Пример: Did you use to go out often?  
Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

Did you ...? Yes, I/we did. No, I/we didn't.

Did he/she/it ...? Yes, he/she/it did. No, he/she/it didn't.

Did they ...? Yes, they did. No, they didn't.

### 13 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.

SA: Did you use to play with your friends when you were five?

SB: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 play with your friends? | 6 listen to fairy tales? |
| 2 watch many cartoons?    | 7 have a bath every day? |
| 3 go to bed late?         | 8 drink milk?            |
| 4 cry a lot?              | 9 dress yourself?        |
| 5 make your bed?          | 10 get pocket money?     |

## Revision Box

### 14 Choose the correct answer.

- Jacques Cousteau ..... **B** ..... the oceans.  
A explores B explored C is exploring
- Toby ..... a bicycle, but now he drives a car.  
A is riding B used to ride C rides
- I ..... an interesting book at the moment.  
A don't read B read C am reading
- He ..... home early yesterday because he felt ill.  
A went B is going C used to go
- Mr Jones ....., but he does now.  
A used to travel B didn't use to travel C travelled
- I ..... a noise, so I went to see what it was.  
A heard B hear C am hearing
- Bobby ..... how to use a computer at present.  
A learnt B is learning C learns
- My parents ..... to a party tonight.  
A used to go B goes C are going
- The ferry boat ..... every day at quarter past two.  
A leaves B leave C is leaving
- I ..... getting up early in the morning.  
A likes B don't like C doesn't like

## ORAL Activity

Look at the pictures below. Picture A shows what people used to do in their free time sixty years ago and Picture B what they do nowadays. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

e.g. SA: Did people use to watch TV sixty years ago?  
SB: No, they didn't.

watch TV - dress differently - spend more time together - talk to each other a lot - go out at night much - read more



## WRITING Activity

Now, using the pictures and the notes from the Oral Activity, complete the text below.

Life was different sixty years ago. People 1) ..... (not/have) the things we have nowadays. First of all, they 2) ..... (not/watch) TV and they 3) ..... (talk) to each other a lot. Nowadays, people 4) ..... (not/talk) to each other much because they 5) ..... (spend) a lot of time watching TV. Sixty years ago, people 6) ..... (dress) differently. For example, women 7) ..... (wear) longer dresses and men usually 8) ..... (wear) a suit and a tie on Sundays. ....



# UNIT 3

## Past Continuous



Were Paul and Claire working at 8 o'clock last night?

No, they weren't.

They were having dinner at a restaurant.

Прошедшее продолженное время (past continuous\*) образуется с помощью **was / were** (формы past simple глагола to be) и смыслового глагола, к которому добавляется **-ing**. В вопросах **was / were** ставятся перед подлежащим. В отрицаниях **not** следует после **was / were**.

\* Употребляется также термин past progressive.

Прошедшее продолженное время

Утверждение			
I	was	} studying.	
He/She/It	was		
You/We/They	were		
Вопрос			
Was	I	} studying?	
Was	he/she/it		
Were	you/we/they		
Отрицание			
		Полная форма	Краткая форма
I	was not	wasn't	} studying.
He/She/It	was not	wasn't	
You/We/They	were not	weren't	

**1** A fire broke out yesterday at Crofton Electronics. What were the people doing when the fire broke out? Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: What was Tim doing?

SB: He was sitting at his desk.

1  Tim/sit/at his desk	2  Jim and Robert/ check/some reports
3  Sarah/talk/on the phone	4  the directors/ have/a meeting
5  Mary/work/on the computer	6  Kim/read/a letter

**2** Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.

- A: What 1) ...*was happening*... (happen) at the time of the robbery?  
 B: Well, I 2) ..... (sit) in my office. I 3) ..... (talk) to an employee. Some of the staff 4) ..... (put) food onto the shelves. Several customers 5) ..... (do) their shopping and a cashier 6) ..... (stand) behind the till.  
 A: Can you tell me anything about the robbers?  
 B: Yes. They 7) ..... (wear) black masks and they 8) ..... (hold) guns. They 9) ..... (shout).  
 A: How did they get away?  
 B: They drove off in a car which 10) ..... (wait) outside.



# Употребление

Past continuous употребляется для выражения:

- ◆ **временного действия, продолжавшегося в прошлом в момент, о котором мы говорим. Мы не знаем, когда началось и когда закончилось это действие,**



At three o'clock yesterday afternoon Mike and his son **were washing** the dog. (Мы не знаем, когда они начали и когда закончили мыть собаку.)

- ◆ **временного действия, продолжавшегося в прошлом (longer action) в момент, когда произошло другое действие (shorter action). Для выражения второго действия (shorter action) мы употребляем **past simple**,**

He **was reading** a newspaper **when** his wife **came**. (was reading = longer action; came = shorter action)



- ◆ **двух и более временных действий, одновременно продолжавшихся в прошлом.**



The people **were watching** while the cowboy **was riding** the bull.

- ◆ **Past continuous употребляется также для описания обстановки, на фоне которой происходили события рассказа (повествования).**

The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**. Tom **was driving** his old truck through the forest.



# Маркеры

Маркерами past continuous являются: **while, when, as, all day / night / morning** и т.д.

**when/while/as + past continuous (longer action)**  
**when + past simple (shorter action)**

3

Match Column A with Column B.

### Column A

- 1 While I was driving home, .....e.....
- 2 We were watching the children .....
- 3 He cut his finger .....
- 4 At eight o'clock yesterday morning .....
- 5 As she was crossing the street, .....
- 6 While they were talking, .....

### Column B

- a as he was chopping wood.
- b he was sleeping in his bed.
- c while they were playing.
- d she slipped and fell.
- e I ran out of petrol.
- f the doorbell rang.

4

Join the sentences using **as, when or while**, as in the example.

- 1 Tina was cooking. She burnt herself.  
*...As/When/While Tina was cooking, she burnt herself. ...*  
*...Tina was cooking when she burnt herself. ...*
- 2 Laura was making some tea. She dropped the kettle.
- 3 Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden. It started raining.
- 4 Peter was driving his car. He got a flat tyre.
- 5 She was walking in the park. A dog attacked her.

5

Put the verbs in brackets into the **past simple or past continuous**. Which is the longer action in each sentence?

- 1 As I ...*was doing*... (do) the washing-up, I ...*broke*... (break) a glass. "*Doing the washing-up is the longer action.*"
- 2 We ..... (walk) in the woods when the storm ..... (begin).



# UNIT 3

## Past Continuous

- 3 John ..... (repair) his motor bike when his mother ..... (arrive).
- 4 I ..... (eat) my lunch when the phone ..... (ring).
- 5 He ..... (ride) his bicycle to school when he ..... (drop) his bag.
- 6 We ..... (see) a bad accident as we ..... (drive) to the airport.
- 7 Tom ..... (watch) the match when the TV ..... (break down).
- 8 We ..... (talk) when she ..... (come) into the room.

### Краткие ответы

Пример: Were you sleeping at eleven o'clock last night? Yes, I was.

Were you ...?	Yes, I was/we were. No, I wasn't/we weren't.
Was he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it was. No, he/she/it wasn't.
Were they ...?	Yes, they were. No, they weren't.

6

Yesterday, the people in the picture had to wait two hours for their boat which was late. What were they doing while they were waiting? Look at the picture and describe it using the past continuous.

e.g. The two girls were playing with a ball.



7

Look at the picture in ex. 6 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- 1 the two girls / play / tennis?  
SA: *Were the two girls playing tennis?*  
SB: *No, they weren't. They were playing volleyball.*
- 2 the young man / listen to / music?  
.....
- 3 the older man / read / a book?  
.....
- 4 the women / knit?  
.....
- 5 the Japanese tourists / take / pictures?  
.....

8

Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.

A Yesterday, I went for a walk in the park. While I was there, I saw lots of children who 1) *...were playing...* (play). There was a man who 2) ..... (walk) his dogs. He 3) ..... (throw) sticks and the dogs 4) ..... (run) to catch them. A gardener 5) ..... (plant) some flowers and some old ladies 6) ..... (sit) on a park bench enjoying the warm sunshine. It was lovely.

B Harriet and Liam got married last weekend. It was a beautiful wedding. The bridesmaids 1) ..... (wear) pink dresses and they 2) ..... (all/carry) small bouquets of pink and white flowers. The photographer 3) ..... (take) photographs and the bride's mother 4) ..... (cry) because she was so happy. The sun 5) ..... (shine) and the couple 6) ..... (smile) at everyone.

9

In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- 1 at six o'clock yesterday evening?  
SA: *What were you doing at six o'clock yesterday evening?*  
SB: *I was doing my English homework.*
- 2 at two o'clock this morning?
- 3 at half past nine last Sunday evening?
- 4 an hour ago?
- 5 at noon last Saturday?



# Сопоставление Past Continuous и Past Simple

## Past Continuous

Past continuous употребляется для выражения:

- **временного действия, продолжавшегося в прошлом в момент, о котором мы говорим,**



*At nine o'clock yesterday morning, the plane **was flying** to Tahiti from New York. (Мы не знаем когда начался полет и когда он закончился.)*

- **двух временных действий, одновременно продолжавшихся в прошлом.**



*He **was listening** carefully while they **were explaining** the plan to him.*

## Past Simple

Past simple употребляется для выражения:

- **действия, которое произошло (завершилось) в прошлом в установленное время,**



*The plane **landed** at the airport at eight o'clock yesterday morning. (Время установлено. Действие завершилось. Самолет приземлился.)*

- **действий, следовавших непосредственно одно за другим в прошлом.**



*First she **read** the advertisement and then she **called** the company.*

### 10 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple.

- 1 We ...*went*... (go) swimming every week when we were young.
- 2 Simon..... (dance) when he fell and hurt his leg.
- 3 Why ..... (you/laugh) all through your history lesson yesterday?
- 4 I ..... (drink) a glass of milk every day when I was a child.
- 5 Todd often ..... (ride) horses when he was a boy.
- 6 Bill ..... (write) a letter when his mother came home.
- 7 It ..... (rain) while I was waiting for the bus.
- 8 I .....(play) the guitar when I was young, but I don't any more.
- 9 Debbie .....(sing) in the school choir many years ago.
- 10 Liz ..... (clean) the windows when I saw her.

### 11 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple.

- A Steve 1) ...*had*... (have) an accident yesterday. He 2) ..... (drive) his car when a bird 3) ..... (fly) into the windscreen. He 4) ..... (try) to stop quickly but he 5) ..... (crash) into a wall. Luckily, he 6) ..... (not/be) hurt.
- B Last week, I 1) ..... (go) to a talk by a famous writer. He 2) ..... (talk) about his new book when I 3) ..... (arrive). He 4) ..... (give) such an interesting talk that I 5) ..... (be) disappointed when it 6) ..... (end).
- C Julie 1) ..... (tidy) her bedroom last weekend. While she 2) ..... (tidy) it, she 3) ..... (find) some of the toys she 4) ..... (have) when she was a child. She 5) ..... (not/want) to throw them away, so she 6) ..... (put) them in a box and 7) ..... (store) them in the attic.



# UNIT 3

## Past Continuous

**12** Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous or the past simple. Then, put the pictures in the right order.



It 1) ...*was*... (be) a beautiful spring morning when Emma and her father 2) ..... (decide) to visit Seaton Castle. The sun 3) ..... (shine) and the birds 4) ..... (sing). Emma 5) ..... (feel) very excited. The castle 6) ..... (be) very old and made of stone. They 7) ..... (climb) the steps to the top of the tower. While they 8) ..... (admire) the view, they 9) ..... (hear) some noises. They 10) ..... (look) around but they 11) ..... (not/see) anybody. "That's funny," said Emma. "I 12) ..... (think) I 13) ..... (see) someone standing over there." After a while they 14) ..... (decide) to visit the cellar of the castle. Emma 15) ..... (examine) an old barrel when she 16) ..... (hear) the door of the cellar close behind them. "Dad," she 17) ..... (say), "don't close the door!" "But, I 18) ..... (not/close) it, dear," her father said. Emma 19) ..... (turn) around and 20) ..... (see) a shadow on the wall. She 21) ..... (know) then that the ghost of Seaton Castle 22) ..... (watch) them!

**13** Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

Dear Rick,

I'm writing to you from my hotel in Switzerland.

I'm having a lovely time here but you can't imagine what 1) ...*happened*... (happen) to me yesterday. I 2) ..... (be) on the mountain with my friends and we 3) ..... (have) a lovely time because the snow 4) ..... (be) perfect for skiing. Unfortunately the sun 5) ..... (shine) on the snow, so it 6) ..... (be) difficult to see. Suddenly, I 7) ..... (hit) a rock and I 8) ..... (fall) over. Luckily I 9) ..... (not/be) seriously hurt — I just 10) ..... (get) a few bruises. Now I'm trying to be more careful!

I'll see you when I get back.

Best wishes,  
Kevin

**14** Correct the mistakes.

- Philip was washing the car while the fire started.
- Neil was studying when his sister was listening to music.
- Harriet was opening the door and walked into the house.
- We were having lunch at a lovely restaurant every day when we were on holiday.
- Brian drank tea at five o'clock yesterday afternoon.
- Dad was repairing the TV while Mum cooked dinner.
- I was going to the cinema last Saturday.
- I was buying a new dress for my party yesterday.
- While Jeff built the garden shed, he hurt himself.
- While the teacher were speaking, the students were listening to him.



# Revision Box

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous, present simple, past simple or past continuous.

- I ...*was cleaning*... (clean) the windows when the telephone ..... (ring).
- "What is that noise?" "James ..... (repair) his bike at the moment."
- He ..... (read) a book when his mother ..... (call) him.
- "..... (be) you busy?" "No, what ..... (you/want) me to do?"
- They ..... (sing) while we ..... (play) some music.
- Susan is a nurse. She usually ..... (work) at night.

**16** Choose the correct answer.

- The earth ...*B*... round the sun.  
A moved      B moves      C is moving
- Sarah ..... a new car last week.  
A is buying      B buy      C bought
- I ..... when suddenly the dog began to bark.  
A study      B studied      C was studying
- They ..... hard at the moment.  
A are working      B were working      C worked
- I ..... home from work when it began to snow.  
A am walking      B walk      C was walking
- Jane ..... the receiver and dialled the number.  
A lifts      B was lifting      C lifted
- Walt Disney ..... Mickey Mouse.  
A was creating      B creates      C created
- Helen ..... to the gym every day, but now she doesn't.  
A used to go      B didn't use to go      C was going
- We ..... for a new house at the moment.  
A are looking      B look      C looked
- Ted ..... his father in the garden every Sunday.  
A was helping      B helps      C is helping
- The ferry to Calais ..... at 3 o'clock every day.  
A leave      B leaves      C was leaving
- You ..... your music too loud! I can't stand it!  
A were always playing      B always play      C are always playing

## ORAL Activity

Look at the picture. It shows what the people were doing/did when a bank robbery happened. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

- e.g. SA: *What was the manager doing?*  
SB: *He was talking on the phone.*  
SA: *What did he do when he saw the robbers?*  
SB: *He stood up.*

- manager / talk on the phone / stand up  
cashier / count some money / put his hands up  
child / sit on a chair / start to cry  
old lady / wait in the queue / faint



## WRITING Activity

Imagine that one of the people who saw the robbery is writing a letter to a friend to tell him/her what was happening/ happened on that day. Using the picture and your notes from the Oral Activity, complete the letter.

Dear ..... (friend's name),

I'm writing to tell you what happened to me yesterday while I was depositing some money in the bank.

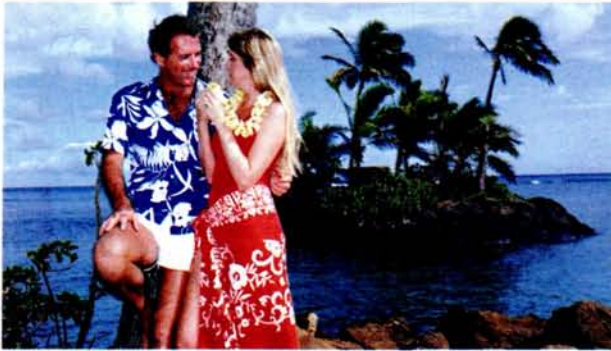
I was standing in the queue when two bank robbers suddenly appeared at the door. ....

.....  
.....



# UNIT 4

## Present Perfect Simple



Bob and Mary **have been** on holiday for a week. They've **visited** a lot of tropical beaches and they've **swum** in the blue sea. **Have they bought** any souvenirs yet? No, they **haven't**.

Настоящее совершенное время (present perfect simple, или просто present perfect) образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола **have / has** и причастия прошедшего времени (past participle). Причастие прошедшего времени правильных глаголов образуется путем добавления к глаголу окончания **-ed**. Например: *play - played*. Причастие прошедшего времени неправильных глаголов образуется иначе. Например: *see - seen*. (Смотрите список неправильных глаголов на странице 152.)

Вопросы строятся путем постановки **have / has** перед подлежащим. Например: *Have they read the book?* Отрицания строятся путем постановки **not** между **have / has** и причастием прошедшего времени. Например: *He has not/hasn't repaired the TV yet.*

Настоящее совершенное время

Утверждение			
	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	have	've	} finished/ left.
He/She/It	has	's	
You/We/They	have	've	
Вопрос			
Have	I	} finished/ left?	
Has	he/she/it		
Have	you/we/they		
Отрицание			
	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	have not	haven't	} finished/ left.
He/She/It	has not	hasn't	
You/We/They	have not	haven't	

### 1 Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.

- read / a newspaper / yesterday  
*...I haven't read a newspaper since yesterday...*
- have / a break / this morning
- travel / abroad / last summer
- watch / TV / last night
- buy / a present / December
- write / a letter / Christmas
- eat / dinner / at a restaurant / last month







### Краткие ответы

Пример: *Has she called her parents? Yes, she has.*

Have you ...?	Yes, I/we have. No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it has. No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they ...?	Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

### 2 Sam hasn't seen John for a long time. He wants to know what John has done since they last met. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.

SA: *Have you found a new job?*  
SB: *Yes, I have.*

	find / a new job?	✓
	buy / a bigger car?	✓
	move / house?	✗
	get / married?	✗
	finish / your studies?	✓
	start / taking karate lessons?	✓



## Употребление

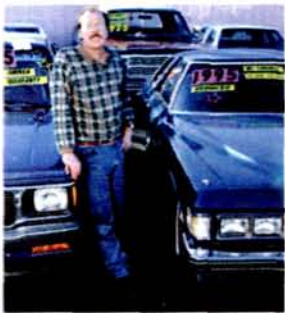
Present perfect simple употребляется для выражения:

- ♦ действий, которые произошли в прошлом в неопределенное время. Конкретное время действия не важно, важен результат,



*Kim has bought a new mobile phone. (Когда она его купила? Мы это не уточняем, поскольку это не важно. Важно то, что у нее есть новый мобильный телефон.)*

- ♦ действий, которые начались в прошлом и все еще продолжают в настоящем,



*He has been a car salesman since 1990. (Он стал продавцом автомобилей в 1990 году и до сих пор им является.)*

- ♦ действий, которые завершились совсем недавно и их результаты все еще ощущаются в настоящем.



*They have done their shopping. (Мы видим, что они только что сделали покупки, поскольку они выходят из супермаркета с полной тележкой.)*

- ♦ Present perfect simple употребляется также со словами "today", "this morning / afternoon" и т.д., когда обозначенное ими время в момент речи еще не истекло.



*He has made ten pots this morning. (Сейчас утро. Указанное время не истекло.)*

## Маркеры

К маркерам present perfect относятся:

*for, since, already, just, always, recently, ever, how long, yet, lately, never, so far, today, this morning / afternoon / week / month / year и т.д.*

### В утверждениях

- **for** *Hanp.:* I have known them **for** six years.
- **since** *Hanp.:* She has been ill **since** Monday.
- **already** *Hanp.:* We have **already** eaten our lunch.
- **just** *Hanp.:* I have **just** posted the letter.
- **always** *Hanp.:* She has **always** wanted to travel abroad.
- **recently** *Hanp.:* He has **recently** published a book.

### В вопросах

- **ever** *Hanp.:* Have you **ever** met anybody famous?
- **how long** *Hanp.:* **How long** have you lived here?
- **yet** *Hanp.:* Has Paul left **yet**?
- **lately** *Hanp.:* Have you seen any good films **lately**?

### В отрицаниях

- **for** *Hanp.:* I **haven't** talked to him **for** days.
- **since** *Hanp.:* They **haven't** been abroad **since** 1990.
- **yet** *Hanp.:* She **hasn't** answered my letter **yet**.
- **lately** *Hanp.:* I **haven't** seen John **lately**.
- **never** *Hanp.:* They **have never** worked abroad.

## 3

Fill in *since* or *for*.

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 ..... <i>for</i> ..... ten years | 6 ..... six months            |
| 2 ..... I was five                 | 7 ..... lunch-time            |
| 3 ..... 8 o'clock                  | 8 ..... we moved to this town |
| 4 ..... two hours                  | 9 ..... three minutes         |
| 5 ..... ages                       |                               |

## 4

Match Column A with Column B.

Column A	Column B
1 Jerry hasn't typed	a visited Japan?
2 She has always	b talked to them.
3 Have you ever	c the letter yet.
4 We've already	d to New York twice this year.
5 Tim has already been	e known them?
6 How long have you	f wanted to be a singer.



**5** Fill in the gaps with *recently, how long, yet, always, ever, already, since or never*.

- 1 A: ...*How long*... has she been an air hostess?  
B: ..... she left school.
- 2 A: Jonathan has moved house .....  
B: What's his new address?
- 3 A: I can't phone you. I haven't got a phone .....  
B: Well, I'll come to your house instead.
- 4 A: Has she finished her homework .....?  
B: Yes. She's ..... finished it.
- 5 A: He eats a lot of vegetables, doesn't he?  
B: Yes. He's ..... liked vegetables.
- 6 A: Have you ..... been to China?  
B: No, I have ..... been there.

**6** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *present perfect simple*.

- 1 A: Have you ever given an interview?  
B: No, I ...*have never done*... (never/do) that.
- 2 A: What time does the train leave?  
B: It ..... (just/leave)!
- 3 A: Is the new restaurant good?  
B: I ..... (not/eat) there yet.
- 4 A: Shall I do the shopping now?  
B: No, I ..... (already/do) it.
- 5 A: Julia, are you ready?  
B: No, I ..... (not/dry) my hair yet.
- 6 A: Would you like to have lunch with me?  
B: No, thanks. I ..... (already/eat).

Have gone (to) – Have been (to)



- ◆ They **have gone to** the cinema. (Это означает, что они еще не вернулись. Они все еще в кино.)
- ◆ She **has been to** London. (Это означает, что она посетила Лондон, но она уже не в Лондоне. Она уже вернулась.)

*Have been in*

**7** Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to) or have/has gone (to)*.

- 1 "Where are Tom and Lucy?" "They ...*have gone to*... the theatre."
- 2 I don't live in London. I ..... only ..... there once.
- 3 I am alone in the house. My parents ..... on holiday.
- 4 "Is Philip at home?" "No, he ....." work."
- 5 My friend wants us to go on holiday to Madrid this summer, but I ..... already ..... there.
- 6 Anita has just come home. She ..... the theatre.
- 7 "Where are Julia and Dave?" "They ..... the sports centre with their friends."

**8** Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to) or have/has gone (to)*.

- A: Hi, Roger! Where is everybody? The house is very quiet.
- B: Well, Mum 1) ...*has gone to*... the cinema with Mavis.
- A: How about your sister?
- B: She's having a shower right now because she 2) ..... the gym.
- A: I 3) ..... the gym twice this week. It's really exhausting.
- B: As for Dad, he 4) ..... the library to get some books.
- A: So, how about going to that new café that's just opened near the park?
- B: Oh, I 5) ..... there. It isn't that great. Why don't we call Steve and go to the basketball court?
- A: Okay, let's do that instead.



# Сопоставление Past Simple и Present Perfect Simple

## Past Simple

Мы употребляем **past simple** для выражения действия, которое:

- произошло в прошлом в указанное время,



Ed Prior **won** his first gold medal in 1992. (Когда? В 1992 году. Время указано.)

- началось и закончилось в прошлом.



Annette **had** a cold for two days. (Она больше не простужена.)

## Present Perfect Simple

Мы употребляем **present perfect simple** для выражения действия, которое:

- произошло в прошлом в неуставленное время,



Ed Prior **has won** a lot of medals. (Когда? Мы не знаем. Время не указано.)

- началось в прошлом и продолжается сейчас.



Lucy **has had** a cold for two days. (Она до сих пор простужена.)

**9 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.**

- A: I **...went...** (go) to the new gym yesterday.  
B: It's good, isn't it? I ..... (go) there a few times.
- A: ..... (you/write) to Simon lately?  
B: Yes, I ..... (write) him a letter last week.
- A: How long ..... (you/be) married?  
B: Only for six months. I ..... (get) married last December.
- A: I ..... (not/see) Sam for a long time.  
B: Really? I ..... (see) him yesterday at the swimming pool.
- A: ..... (you/type) the report yet?  
B: Yes, I ..... (finish) it half an hour ago.
- A: Mary ..... (know) Steven for six years.  
B: When ..... (they/meet)?  
A: When they ..... (be) at university together.
- A: ..... (you/ever/play) rugby?  
B: Yes, I have. I ..... (play) for the first time last week.
- A: James ..... (write) a new book last year.  
B: I know. I ..... (read) some great reviews about it in the newspaper.

**10 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.**

- SA: *Have you ever been to the USA?*  
SB: *Yes, I have.*  
SA: *When did you go?*  
SB: *I went in 1996.*



go/the USA (When)



plant/a tree (Where)



sing/in a choir (When)



save/your money (Why)



meet/a politician (Who)



travel/by boat (When)





**11 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.**

Dear Margaret,

Thank you very much for your letter which I 1) *received* (receive) last week. I 2) ..... (be) really happy to hear from you after all this time.

I've got a lot of news to tell you about myself. I 3) ..... (get) a new job nine months ago. I work as a reporter for our local TV station now. I 4) ..... (have) many interesting experiences so far. When I first 5) ..... (start) work, the manager 6) ..... (ask) me to interview our old school headmaster. He 7) ..... (be) so surprised to see me with a microphone in my hand!

Last month, a fire 8) ..... (break out) in a big factory in the area. I 9) ..... (be) the only reporter who 10) ..... (manage) to talk to the owner! That 11) ..... (make) me feel very proud.

As you can see, I enjoy my job very much. I 12) ..... (meet) a lot of important people and I 13) ..... (have) the opportunity to see lots of new places. I 14) ..... (buy) a new car because my old one 15) ..... (break down) a couple of weeks ago.

I have to go now because they 16) ..... (just/inform) me that I have to fly by helicopter to Middleford. I have to talk to people whose homes were damaged by the storm which 17) ..... (hit) the area last night. You see, I don't have a moment's rest!

Keep in touch.

Love,  
Rosie

**12 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.**

A: Hello, Billy. I 1) *haven't seen* (not/see) you for a long time.

B: Yes, I 2) ..... (be) very busy recently.

A: Really? Tell me what you 3) ..... (do) since we last 4) ..... (see) each other.

B: Well, I 5) ..... (get) my degree last month and then I 6) ..... (move) house.

A: When 7) ..... (you/move)?

B: Last week, but I 8) ..... (not/unpack) everything yet.

A: I 9) ..... (phone) you on Tuesday but there 10) ..... (be) no answer.

B: I 11) ..... (be) busy at my new house then.

A: Never mind, I only 12) ..... (want) to invite you to a party next week at my house.

B: Great! Thank you.

**13 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.**

1 Mr and Mrs Patel *won* (win) two free tickets to Paris in a TV show last week.

2 First, Robert ..... (brush) his teeth, then he ..... (go) to bed.

3 "..... (you/ever/see) a lion?" "Yes, I saw one when I ..... (go) to Kenya in 1996."

4 I ..... (not/see) my family for two years.

5 "Where's John?" "He ..... (go) fishing for the day with his father."

6 My sister ..... (not/play) the violin since she was twelve.

7 I ..... (already/see) this film. Let's watch something else.

8 Last week, Fred ..... (fall) off a ladder and ..... (break) his arm.

9 I ..... (never/hear) such a moving song before.

10 Jennifer ..... (always/want) to get Harrison Ford's autograph.

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

**Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.**

1 He has never travelled by boat before.  
**time** It's the *first time he has travelled* by boat.

2 Sharon hasn't been to a party for two months.  
**went** The last time *Sharon went to a party* was two months ago.

3 It's a long time since Mary visited Helen.  
**for** Mary *has not visited Helen for* a long time.

**14 Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold.**

1 Kate hasn't phoned her mother for a week.  
**phoned** The last time *Kate phoned her mother was*... a week ago.

2 They have never visited Vienna before.  
**time** It's the ..... Vienna.

3 It's a long time since I ate out.  
**for** I ..... a long time.

4 Roger hasn't played tennis for six weeks.  
**played** The last time ..... tennis was six weeks ago.

5 It's years since Mr Smith went on holiday.  
**has** Mr Smith ..... for years.

6 John hasn't been to his country house since Easter.  
**went** The last time John ..... was at Easter.



**15** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 We have bought a new sofa last month.
- 2 Jim lives in Germany for three years.
- 3 My father has went fishing.
- 4 She is just moved house.
- 5 We have eaten lunch at one o'clock.
- 6 Sophie has do her homework.
- 7 Ann and Tim have got married ten years ago.
- 8 I am at school since nine o'clock.

**Revision Box**

**16** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

Dear Bert,

I 1) ...*'m writing*... (write) to tell you what a great time we 2) ..... (have) at the Sour Grapes concert last weekend. It's a pity you 3) ..... (not/come).

The concert 4) ..... (take) place in the football stadium near the university. There 5) ..... (be) about 80,000 people there. While we 6) ..... (wait) to get in, we 7) ..... (see) the members of the group arrive in a big black limo. They 8) ..... (have) bodyguards with them. Anyway, we 9) ..... (find) our seats and 10) ..... (wait) impatiently for the concert to begin. The Sour Grapes 11) ..... (recently/record) an album which 12) ..... (become) very successful.

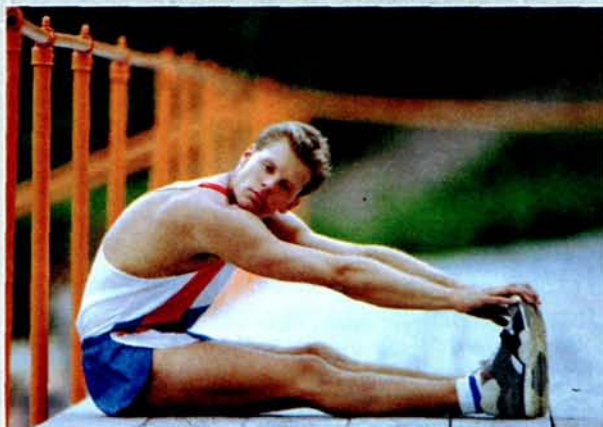
The concert 13) ..... (last) for two and a half hours. I 14) ..... (send) you some photos that Alex 15) ..... (take) when we 16) ..... (be) there. We 17) ..... (hear) that the Sour Grapes 18) ..... (give) a big concert in London next month. Perhaps you can see them there.

Best Wishes,  
Roger

**ORAL**  
Activity

Read the notes about Paul Vern who is a famous runner. Make sentences using the prompts given as in the example.

e.g. Paul Vern **was born** in Sussex.



- be born / in Sussex
- always want / be a runner
- start running / at the age of seven
- win / the school championship / when / be / 15 years old
- join / the national team / four years ago
- win / several medals / so far
- recently receive / the "Athlete of the Year" award
- get married / last month
- already take part / in two international championships

**WRITING**  
Activity

Imagine you want to write an article about Paul Vern for your school newspaper. Use your notes from the Oral Activity to write a short text. You can begin like this:

*Paul Vern is a famous runner who competes internationally. He was born in Sussex.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# UNIT 5

## The Future

### Будущее простое время



A: I'm sure we'll **have** a great time at Joan's party tomorrow night.

B: Yes, I agree. All our friends **will be** there.

A: **Will** your father **let** you take the car?

B: No, I'm afraid he **won't**.

**Будущее простое время (future simple\*)** образуется с помощью **will** и **инфинитива без частицы to**. Will используется для всех лиц.\*\*  
Например: Susan **will post** the letters tomorrow morning.

Вопросы образуются путем постановки **will** перед подлежащим. Например: **Will** Kate lend you her book? В отрицаниях после **will** ставится **not**.  
Например: He **will not / won't pay** the bill.

\* Иногда употребляется термин future indefinite.

\*\* Иногда для первого лица (I, we) вместо will употребляется shall.

#### Утверждение

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	<b>will</b>	'll	} phone.
He/She/It	<b>will</b>	'll	
You/We/They	<b>will</b>	'll	

#### Вопрос

<b>Will</b>	} phone?
<b>Will</b>	
<b>Will</b>	

#### Отрицание

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	<b>will not</b>	<b>won't</b>	} phone.
He/She/It	<b>will not</b>	<b>won't</b>	
You/We/They	<b>will not</b>	<b>won't</b>	

### Употребление

Future simple употребляется:

- ♦ для обозначения будущих действий, которые, возможно, произойдут, а возможно, и нет,



We'll visit Disney World one day.

- ♦ для предсказаний будущих событий (predictions),

Life **will be** better fifty years from now.

- ♦ для выражения угроз или предупреждений (threats / warnings),



Stop or I'll shoot.

- ♦ для выражения обещаний (promises) и решений, принятых в момент речи (on-the-spot decisions),



I'll help you with your homework.

- ♦ с глаголами **hope, think, believe, expect** и т.п., с выражениями **I'm sure, I'm afraid** и т.п., а также с наречиями **probably, perhaps** и т.п.  
I think he **will support** me.  
He **will probably go** to work.

### Маркеры

К маркерам future simple относятся:

tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week / month / year, tonight, soon, in a week / month / year и т.д.



**1** What will life be like in the 21st century? Look at the prompts and make sentences using *will* or *won't*, as in the example.

- 1 People / live longer ✓  
*People will live longer.*
- 2 Robots / do most of the work ✓
- 3 People / use electric cars ✗
- 4 Pollution / disappear ✓
- 5 People / die of serious diseases ✗
- 6 Children / stop going to school ✗
- 7 People / go on holiday to the moon ✓

**Will / Shall**

- Мы употребляем:**
- ◆ **Will you ...?**, когда просим сделать что-нибудь для нас (request),  
Например: *Will you post these letters for me, please?* (= *Can you post these letters for me, please?*)
  - ◆ **Shall I ...?**, когда предлагаем сделать что-нибудь для кого-то (offer),  
Например: *Shall I help you clean your room?* (= *Do you want me to help you clean your room?*)
  - ◆ **Shall we ...?**, когда предлагаем кому-то сделать что-либо вместе (suggestion).  
Например: *Shall we go to the theatre tonight?* (= *Why don't we go to the theatre tonight?*)

**2** Ask questions using the prompts, as in the example.

- 1 The garden is very untidy. (I / cut / the grass)  
*Shall I cut the grass?*
- 2 It's a lovely evening. (we / go for / a walk)  
.....
- 3 I need a hot drink. (I / make / some tea)  
.....
- 4 It's very quiet in here. (I / turn on / the radio)  
.....
- 5 The Smiths are back. (we / visit / them)  
.....
- 6 I've cut my finger. (I / get / a plaster)  
.....

**3** What does *will/shall* express in each sentence? Underline the correct meaning.

- 1 Tidy your room or I won't let you go to the party. (threat/request)
- 2 Your daughter will have a very successful career. (warning/prediction)

- 3 Shall I carry your shopping bags for you? (offer/suggestion)
- 4 I'll buy a present for my mother. (on-the-spot decision/prediction)
- 5 Will you take out the rubbish, please? (suggestion/request)

**4** Replace the words in italics with *Will you*, *Shall I* or *Shall we*, as in the example.

- 1 *Why don't we spend our holidays in Spain this summer?*  
*Shall we spend our holidays in Spain this summer?*
- 2 *Do you want me to go to the supermarket for you?*  
.....
- 3 *Can you pick up the children from school for me, please?*  
.....
- 4 *Why don't we listen to that new CD?*  
.....
- 5 *Do you want me to book the tickets for you?*  
.....
- 6 *Can you take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me, please?*  
.....

**Краткие ответы**

Пример: *Will you pay the bills? Yes, I will.*

Will you ...?	Yes, I/we will.
	No, I/we won't.
Will he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it will.
	No, he/she/it won't.
Will they ...?	Yes, they will.
	No, they won't.

**5** In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *Will you have a party on your birthday this year?*  
SB: *Yes, I will. / No, I won't.*

- 1 have a party on your birthday this year?
- 2 go to university when you finish school?
- 3 travel abroad if you have enough money?
- 4 go out with your friends at the weekend?
- 5 watch TV this evening?
- 6 study hard for next term's exams?
- 7 learn how to drive next summer?



6

Answer the following questions about yourself using *I think/I hope/I expect I'll ... or I'm sure/I'm afraid I'll ...*, as in the example.

- Where will you be at 5 o'clock tomorrow afternoon?  
*I expect I'll be at home.*
- Where will you go at the weekend?
- Where will you spend your holidays?
- What will you do if you fail your exams?
- When will you buy your own car?
- Who will you ask for help if you are in trouble?

### ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ

Future simple не употребляется после слов **while, before, until, as soon as, after, if** и **when** в придаточных предложениях условия и времени. В таких случаях используется present simple.

Например: *I'll make a phone call while I wait for you.* (A he: ... ~~while I will wait for you.~~) Please phone me **when** you finish work.

В дополнительных придаточных предложениях после "when" и "if" возможно употребление future simple.

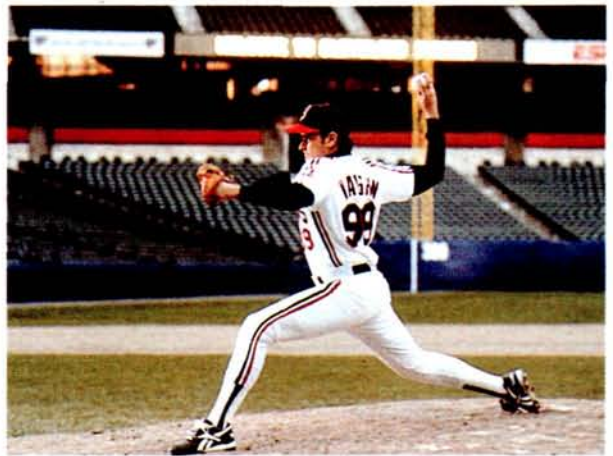
Например: *I don't know when / if Helen will be back.*

7

Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the future simple.

- They ...*will/'ll go*... (go) to school when they ..... (be) five years old.
- I ..... (call) you before I ..... (leave) for Paris.
- He ..... (write) a letter to her every day while he ..... (be) at college.
- We ..... (do) our homework when we ..... (get) home.
- John ..... (fix) the tap as soon as he ..... (come) back from work.
- When ..... (you/pack) your suitcase?
- I ..... (not/do) anything until you ..... (be) ready.
- When ..... (you/phone) me?
- I promise I ..... (buy) you a present when I ..... (return) from my holiday.
- When she ..... (pass) her driving test, she ..... (buy) a car.

## Be Going To



*He is going to throw the ball.*

Be going to употребляется для:

- выражения заранее принятых планов и намерений на будущее,  
Например: *Bob is going to drive to Manchester tomorrow morning.*
- предсказаний, когда уже есть доказательства того, что они сбудутся в близком будущем.  
Например: *Look at that tree. It is going to fall down.*

### Утверждение

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	am	'm	} going to leave.
He/She/It	is	's	
You/We/They	are	're	

### Вопрос

Am	} going to leave?
Is	
Are	

### Отрицание

Полная форма      Краткая форма

I	am not	'm not	} going to leave.
He/She/It	is not	isn't	
You/We/They	are not	aren't	



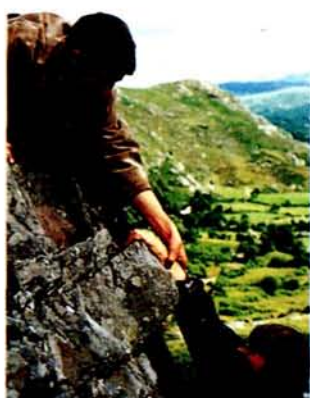
**8** Fill in each gap with *be going to* and one of the verbs from the list.

rescue, explode, jump, fall



1 She ...*is going to jump*... out of the plane.

2 The car .....  
.....  
into the river.



3 The aeroplane .....  
.....  
.....

4 He .....  
.....  
the boy.

**9** Jennifer and Mark are going to spend their holidays in different places this summer. Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

SA: *Is Jennifer going to take her passport?*  
SB: *Yes, she is.*

	JENNIFER	MARK
take/passport	✓	✓
travel/by train	✗	✓
buy/souvenirs	✓	✓
spend/much money	✓	✗
hire/a car	✓	✗

**10** Fill in the gaps with *will/shall* or the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in brackets.

- A: (1) ...*Shall we go*... (we/go) to the football match on Saturday?  
B: I can't. I (2) ..... (help) my sister.  
A: Oh yes. She is moving house, isn't she?  
B: That's right. (3) ..... (you/help) us?  
A: Yes, I'd like to. What time (4) ..... (I/come) to your house?  
B: I'm not sure yet. I (5) ..... (probably/phone) you on Friday to tell you. Is that alright?  
A: Yes. I think I (6) ..... (be) in then.  
B: Okay. (7) ..... (we/go) for a walk now?  
A: I'd rather not. Look at those black clouds. It (8) ..... (rain). Let's stay in and watch a video.  
B: Great idea.

**11** Fill in the gaps with *shall, will* or the correct form of *be going to*.

- 1 A: The shops are closed tomorrow.  
B: I ...*will*... buy bread and milk today then.  
2 A: ..... we tell Mr Peck about the accident?  
B: That's a good idea. Maybe he can help.  
3 A: It's too dark in here to read.  
B: Is it? I ..... turn on the light.  
4 A: Please come and see us.  
B: We ..... visit you soon, that's a promise.  
5 A: ..... I wear a jumper or a coat?  
B: It's very cold. Take your coat.  
6 A: Can we go out to play, Mum?  
B: No, we ..... have dinner now.

## Краткие ответы

Пример: Are you going to call him? Yes, I am.

Are you ...?	Yes, I am/we are. No, I'm not/we aren't.
Is he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it is. No, he/she/it isn't.
Are they ...?	Yes, they are. No, they aren't.



Сравните следующие  
примеры

Для выражения будущих действий мы можем употреблять **future simple**, **be going to**, **present continuous** или **present simple**.

- a) He'll sell his car. (will: действие либо произойдет, либо нет)
- б) She's going to study abroad next year. (be going to: выражение намерений)
- в) They're leaving for Mexico tomorrow. (present continuous: запланированное действие)
- г) The bus leaves at nine o'clock. (present simple: действие по расписанию)

12

A Jonathan is not satisfied with his life as it is. He has already decided to change a number of things. Look at the prompts and say what he intends to do, as in the example.

- move to the city centre  
*He is going to move to the city centre.*



- sell his car



- buy a bigger house



- marry Susan



- apply for a job with a law firm



B Now look at Jonathan's diary. What has he already arranged to do? Make sentences, as in the example.

- Monday, 8th April — move to/the city centre  
*He's moving to the city centre on Monday, 8th April.*
- Tuesday, 9th April — Mr Brown come/collect/the car
- Wednesday, 10th April — sign the contract/for a new house
- Friday, 12th April — have an interview with Mr Ford at 10 o'clock
- Sunday, 20th June — get married

13

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the present simple.

- 1 "...*Is Gordon coming*..." (Gordon/come) with us tonight?" "No, he ...*isn't*... (be/not)"
- 2 My sister ..... (go) to university in September.
- 3 What time ..... (the play/start) tomorrow?
- 4 Natalie ..... (have) a birthday party on Saturday.
- 5 Megan ..... (sing) in the school concert tomorrow night.
- 6 The flight to Berlin ..... (leave) at six o'clock.
- 7 The Browns ..... (move) to their new house this weekend.
- 8 What time ..... (the ferry/reach) Calais tomorrow afternoon?

14

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct tense.

walk, come, post

1

Oh, no! I forgot to post this letter.



Don't worry. I ..... it for you on my way home.

2



He ..... along the tightrope.

3

Tom Ford ..... to our town next week.



Really? That's great!



**15** Correct the mistakes.

- Will I take the children to the playground for you?
- I'll call you when I will finish work.
- Will you to clean the carpet, please?
- The film is starting at 8 o'clock.
- Wait here until he will come.
- The Queen won't not attend the parade tomorrow.

## Revision Box

**16** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

Dear Martha,



I 1) ...*'m writing...*  
(write) to tell you my good news.

I 2) .....  
(save) enough money from my part-time job and, at last, I 3) .....

..... (open) a flower shop. My father 4) ..... (own) a shop years ago and he 5) ..... (give) me some advice and suggestions. He 6) ..... (think) that my shop 7) ..... (be) a success, because there isn't another flower shop in the area.

The shop isn't ready yet. My brother 8) ..... (already/paint) the inside of the shop and tomorrow he 9) ..... (paint) the outside. I 10) ..... (need) to buy a new sign. My mother 11) ..... (want) me to call the shop "Rose", but I 12) ..... (still/think) about it. Anyway, I just hope the local people 13) ..... (like) it.

I 14) ..... (start) work next Monday. I 15) ..... (probably/phone) you some time next week if I 16) ..... (have) time. Wish me luck.

Best wishes,  
Nicky

## ORAL Activity

Rob Brown and Molly Gould are opera singers. A reporter has interviewed them about their summer plans. Look at the table and, in pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.

e.g. SA: Is Rob going to give any concerts in the summer?  
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to give any concerts in the summer?  
SA: Yes, she is.



Rob Brown Molly Gould

• give / concerts	✓	✓
• go / to India	✓	✗
• appear / in a TV show	✗	✓
• go on / holiday in August	✓	✓
• take part / in charity events	✓	✓
• sing / at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations	✗	✗
• make / a record	✓	✗
• sing / in a rock opera	✗	✓

## WRITING Activity

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and complete the newspaper article about Rob Brown and Molly Gould.

Rob Brown and Molly Gould, up-and-coming opera singers, talked to our reporter, Emma Smith, yesterday. She asked them about their future plans, and this is what she found out:

Rob and Molly are going to give concerts in the summer. Rob .....

.....  
.....  
.....



# Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)

## 1 Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.

- I go to bed after midnight. (seldom)  
*I seldom go to bed after midnight.*
- I don't drink tea in the morning. (often)
- She washes the dishes after dinner. (usually)
- I eat in restaurants. (rarely)
- Do they go for a walk on Sunday afternoons? (often)
- Do you visit your grandparents on Saturdays? (usually)
- Mary is late for meetings. (never)
- They don't go abroad on holiday. (usually)

## 2 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

- A: Excuse me. What time **1** ...*does the bus for Plymouth leave...*? (the bus for Plymouth/leave)  
 B: It **2** ..... (leave) in half an hour. **3** ..... (you/go) to Plymouth too?  
 A: Yes. I **4** ..... (visit) my granddaughter. She **5** ..... (live) there. And you?  
 B: I **6** ..... (live) there too. I **7** ..... (do) a course at the college.  
 A: What subject **8** ..... (you/study)?  
 B: Tourism.  
 A: That's interesting.  
 B: I **9** ..... (come) here twice a week because I **10** ..... (work) in a hotel at the moment. It's work experience.  
 A: Yes, I **11** ..... (think) that is very important. **12** ..... (you/like) the work?  
 B: Yes, I **13** ..... (love) it. Ah, look! Here comes the bus!

## 3 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

- He ...*was watching...* (watch) TV when the telephone ...*rang...* (ring).
- I ..... (clean) the house while he ..... (work) in the garden.
- When we ..... (find) the cat it ..... (play) under the bed.
- Joan ..... (have) a shower when the window cleaner ..... (come).

- Grandma ..... (knit) while Grandad ..... (smoke) his pipe.
- When I ..... (arrive) home, Father ..... (paint) the front door.
- Bob and Sally ..... (walk) when it ..... (start) to rain.
- What ..... (you/talk) about when I ..... (come) in?
- I ..... (read) my newspaper when they ..... (knock) on the door.
- As Fiona ..... (wash) the glass, she ..... (cut) her finger.
- Mother ..... (break) the vase while she ..... (dust) it.
- My brother ..... (build) a sandcastle while I ..... (swim) in the sea.

## 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.



Well-known pop singer Zippy Spring **1** ...*has recently signed...* (recently/sign) a new record deal with Star Records in London.

Zippy's success **2** ..... (begin) five years ago when he **3** ..... (record) a song which **4** ..... (go) to the top of the charts. However, he **5** ..... (have) a car accident six months ago and **6** ..... (stay) in hospital for a long time.

He **7** ..... (make) his first public appearance three weeks ago and **8** ..... (thank) his fans for all their love and support.

The music he plays **9** ..... (be) popular with older people since the beginning of his career, but recently younger people **10** ..... (start) to take an interest too.

Zippy only **11** ..... (sign) the deal last week but he **12** ..... (already/write) a number of songs for his new record. He **13** ..... (just/announce) that he **14** ..... (start) to plan his next European tour.



**5** Fill in the gaps with *has/have been (to)* or *has/have gone (to)*.

- 1 A: I ...*have*... never ...*been to*... Austria, but I would love to go.  
B: I ..... there three times. It's a beautiful country.
- 2 A: ..... you ..... the Italian restaurant in town?  
B: No, but Pauline ..... there twice. She said it was lovely.
- 3 A: Are Mandy and Kate coming to the cinema?  
B: No, they ..... out with their cousins.
- 4 A: Where is Dad?  
B: He ..... work.  
A: But it's Sunday. He doesn't work on Sunday!

**6** Fill in the gaps with *already, yet, ever, never, just, so far, since, how long, always or for*. Some of them can be used more than once.



- A: 1) ...*How long*... have you been in Rome?  
B: I've been here 2) ..... last week. What about you?  
A: I've been here 3) ..... only three days. Which places have you visited 4) ..... ?  
B: Well, I've 5) ..... visited the Vatican museum twice and I've spent a whole morning in the Piazza di Spagna.  
A: I haven't been to the Vatican 6) ....., but I intend to. Have you eaten at a traditional restaurant 7) ..... ?  
B: No, I haven't. But I've 8) ..... visited Fontana di Trevi.  
A: Oh, yes. I've 9) ..... wanted to go there and throw a coin in the water! Have you 10) ..... been to Venice?  
B: No, I have 11) ..... been there, but I've 12) ..... arranged to spend two days there before I return home.

**7** Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or future simple.

- 1 I ...*will/'ll help*... (help) you with the shopping before I ..... (go) to the gym.
- 2 I ..... (not/be) at home when my parents ..... (have) the dinner party.
- 3 Karen ..... (go) to the airport after she ..... (finish) work on Friday night.
- 4 When we ..... (arrive) on the island, we ..... (go) straight to the beach.
- 5 They ..... (buy) a new car when they ..... (sell) their old one.
- 6 When Bob and Marie ..... (get) married next month, they ..... (move) into their new house.

**8** Choose the correct item.

- 1 We ...*B*... on holiday next weekend.  
A go                    B are going        C goes
- 2 James is a good student. He ..... his homework every evening.  
A do                    B is doing        C does
- 3 I ..... this film. Let's watch something else.  
A have seen        B saw              C am seeing
- 4 Fred fell off the ladder while he ..... the ceiling.  
A used to paint    B was painting    C painted
- 5 Ted ..... his car last month.  
A sold                B has sold        C is selling
- 6 The sun ..... every morning.  
A is rising        B rises            C was rising
- 7 I ..... my first cassette player when I was eighteen.  
A have bought    B am buying      C bought
- 8 Donna ..... her hair. It is still wet.  
A has just washed B is washing      C washes
- 9 Jennifer ..... eat vegetables, but now she does.  
A used to        B didn't use to    C doesn't

**9** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Peter plays football at the moment.  
2 My parents have bought a new fridge yesterday.  
3 Sarah was writing three letters so far today.  
4 I am going to the gym every Tuesday.  
5 I expect I go shopping on Saturday.  
6 Do you come with us tomorrow morning?  
7 Did you see my dog? He's run away.  
8 Mandy will buy a car as soon as she will pass her driving test.



# UNIT 6

## Relatives



A doctor is a person **who/that** treats sick people.



Dogs are animals **which/that** we can keep as pets.



This is a couple **whose** favourite winter sport is skiing.

Определительные придаточные предложения

- ◆ Определительные придаточные предложения (relative clauses) определяют существительное в главном предложении. Обычно они соединяются с главным предложением относительными местоимениями (**who, which, whose, that**) или союзными словами (**where, when, why**). Например:  
The man **who owns the shop** is French.

определительное придаточное предложение  
[Определительное придаточное предложение определяет (указывает), о каком именно человеке мы говорим.]

- ◆ Мы употребляем **who / that** вместо личных местоимений в именительном падеже (I, you, he и т.д.), когда говорим о людях. Например:  
The girl — **she** lives next door — is from India.

The girl **who/that** lives next door is from India.

- ◆ Мы употребляем **which / that**, когда говорим о предметах или животных. Например:  
The horse — **it** won the race — is black.

The horse **which/that** won the race is black.

- ◆ Когда хотим показать принадлежность (possession), мы употребляем **whose** вместо притяжательных местоимений (my, your, his и др.) с существительными, обозначающими людей, предметы или животных. Например: That's the man — **his** car was stolen.

That's the man **whose** car was stolen.

That's the bag — **its** strap is broken.







That's the bag **whose** strap is broken.

люди	who/that
предметы/животные	which/that
принадлежность	whose

### 1 Look at the pictures and the prompts below and ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: Who was Dickens?

SB: He was the man **who/that** wrote Oliver Twist.

1  Dickens / write Oliver Twist	2  Volta / invent the electric battery	3  Columbus / discover America
4  Von Zeppelin / build the first airship	5  the Kelloggs / make the first cornflakes	6  Cleopatra / rule Egypt

### 2 Look at the pictures and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. A dishwasher is a machine **which/that** you use to wash dishes. A flamingo is a bird **which/that** lives in a warm climate.

1  dishwasher / wash dishes	2  flamingo / live in a warm climate	3  lawnmower / cut grass
4  typewriter / type letters	5  lion / live in the jungle	6  photocopier / make photocopies



**3 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.**

A	B
1 The girl	a which you bought from the pet shop?
2 Is this the puppy	b whose wife had an accident lives next door.
3 The doctors	c whose husband is a banker?
4 The man	d who lives next door is called Helen.
5 The country	e which I like most is Austria.
6 The bicycle	f who work in this hospital are very good.
7 Is this the woman	g which I was riding belongs to my brother.

Относительные местоимения (relative pronouns) в функции дополнения (object) или подлежащего (subject)

◆ Относительное местоимение можно опустить, если оно является дополнением в определительном придаточном предложении. Иными словами, когда между относительным местоимением и глаголом есть существительное или личное местоимение в именительном падеже. Например:

That's the hat. I bought it last week.

That's the hat (**which/that**) I bought last week.  
(Относительное местоимение является дополнением, между **which / that** и глаголом **bought** есть личное местоимение **I**.)

◆ Относительное местоимение нельзя опустить, если оно является подлежащим в определительном придаточном предложении. Иными словами, когда между относительным местоимением и глаголом нет существительного или личного местоимения в именительном падеже. Например:

I met a girl. She is from Japan.

I met a girl **who/that** is from Japan.  
(Относительное местоимение является подлежащим, между **who/that** и глаголом **is** нет другого местоимения или существительного.)

**4 Fill in the correct relative pronoun. Then, write S for subject or O for object. Finally, state if the relatives can be omitted or not, in the boxes provided.**

- The cup ...*which/that*... I bought is broken.
- How old is the boy ..... hit you?
- Have you used the gloves ..... I bought you yet?
- Laura is talking to the man ..... repaired her car.
- Did you return the books ..... you borrowed from the library?
- They live in a big house ..... is in the countryside.
- I'm writing a letter to my aunt ..... lives in Australia.
- Is he the man ..... lives on the farm?
- Is that the film ..... we saw last week?
- Is that the man ..... stole your bag?
- Where did you buy the dress ..... you were wearing yesterday?
- Have you replied to all the letters ..... you received?

1	O	omitted
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		

**who's** [hu:z] = **who is** или **who has**  
Например: "Who's (Who is) there?" "It's Julie."  
**Who's (Who has) got the dictionary?**

**whose** [hu:z] = выражение принадлежности  
Например: Jenny is the girl **whose** mother is a lawyer.

**5 Fill in who's or whose.**

- That's the boy ...*who's*... going to sell me his bike.
- Her brother, ..... name is Jack, is a fireman.
- She's the girl ..... run four marathons this year.
- That's the man ..... house was on fire yesterday.
- Sheila is the girl ..... mother works in the flower shop.
- She is the woman ..... having a party tomorrow.
- He's the man ..... just been promoted at work.
- Mike is the man ..... wife is in hospital.
- I am the person ..... sister got married last week.
- Rob is the one ..... eaten all the biscuits.



◆ Обычно мы не употребляем предлоги перед относительными местоимениями.

- a) The reception **to which** we went was held at a hotel. (официальный стиль — необычная структура)
- b) The café **which/that** we usually go **to** is near our house. (обычная структура)
- в) The café we usually go **to** is near our house. (разговорный стиль)

◆ В определительных придаточных предложениях личные местоимения в объектном падеже после предлогов не употребляются.

Сравните эти примеры:

We spent our holidays with some friends. They are from Belgium.

The friends we spent our holidays with are from Belgium.

(А не: The friends we spent our holidays with ~~them~~ are from Belgium.)

**6 Rewrite the pairs of sentences, as in the example.**

- 1 Larry went to the cinema with a girl. The girl is his sister.
  - a) The girl *who/that Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
  - b) The girl *Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
- 2 Max talked to a man. The man was from Canada.
  - a) The man .....
  - b) The man .....
- 3 Debbie is looking at a photo album. The photo album is mine.
  - a) The photo album .....
  - b) The photo album .....
- 4 Anna is looking for her ring. The ring belonged to her grandmother.
  - a) The ring .....
  - b) The ring .....
- 5 Bob has gone to a bank. The bank is near the Town Hall.
  - a) The bank .....
  - b) The bank .....
- 6 Sharon had dinner with a man. He was her lawyer.
  - a) The man .....
  - b) The man .....
- 7 They invited me to a party. It wasn't very exciting.
  - a) The party .....
  - b) The party .....
- 8 I was talking to a boy. He lives next door.
  - a) The boy .....
  - b) The boy .....

Союзные слова  
Where/When/Why

◆ **When** употребляется для определения времени.



1996 was the year **when** they went on a cruise.

◆ **Where** употребляется для определения места.



A tennis court is a place **where** we play tennis.

◆ **Why** употребляется для определения причины.



He had a fight with his best friend, that's **why** he is sad.

**7 Fill in the gaps with who, why, where, when, which or whose.**

Dear Aunt Joan,

How are you? My new address, 1) **which**... I was supposed to give you a long time ago, is at the top of this page. Sorry!

The village 2) ..... I live now is very quiet and peaceful. In fact, that is the reason

3) ..... I decided to rent a house here. The people 4) .....

live next door to me are very friendly. The day 5) .....

I moved in, they invited me for tea. The woman 6) ..... house I've rented lives in the same street as you. Her name is Mrs Fitzgerald. Do you know her? I must go now, the telephone is ringing.

Write to me soon.

Love,  
Rachel



8

Fill in the gaps with *who*, *which*, *whose*, *why* or *where*.

- A: Hi Helen! Where are you going?  
 B: I'm going round to Jane's house, the woman  
 1) *...whose...* children I often look after. She has to go to the dentist this morning, that's 2) ..... she's asked me to go to her house.  
 A: Is she the woman 3) ..... works in the post office?  
 B: Yes.  
 A: Where does she live?  
 B: She lives in the big house 4) ..... is next to the field.  
 A: Which field?  
 B: The one 5) ..... Mr McGregor keeps his sheep.

9

Fill in the gaps with *where*, *when*, *why*, *who* or *which*.



Martin Foster, (1) *...who...* is 50, is a gardener. 1964 was the year (2) ..... he got his first job. He looked after the gardens of a huge house (3) ..... a very rich family lived. He loves his job and that's the reason (4) ..... he doesn't mind getting up very early in the morning to water the plants and flowers. His favourite time of year is spring (5) ..... all the flowers begin to open and leaves grow on the trees. The part of the garden he likes most is the kitchen garden (6) ..... the vegetables grow, because it has flowers blooming all year round. Martin says flowers and plants make our world beautiful. "That's (7) ..... you must protect the environment around you – it's something (8) ..... can't be replaced."

ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ

Внимательно посмотрите на эти группы предложений. В каждой группе предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- This is Sara. She teaches us ballet.  
**who** This is **Sara who teaches us** ballet.
- That's Simon. His father is a lawyer.  
**whose** That's Simon **whose father is** a lawyer.
- That's the hotel. I spent my holidays there.  
**where** That's the **hotel where I spent** my holidays.
- This is the story. It won first prize in the competition.  
**which** This is the **story which won first prize** in the competition.  
**that** This is **the story that won first prize** in the competition.

10

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- That's the jumper. I knitted it myself.  
**which** That's the *...jumper which I knitted...* myself.
- He's the man. His dog often chases my cat.  
**whose** He's the ..... chases my cat.
- That's the church. We got married there.  
**where** That's the ..... married.
- That's the shop. I bought my new dress there.  
**where** That's the ..... my new dress.
- Philip is the man. He lives in a castle.  
**who** Philip is the ..... a castle.
- These are the people. Their daughter is a rock singer.  
**whose** These are ..... is a rock singer.
- That is the dog. His owner is a famous actor.  
**whose** That is the ..... is a famous actor.
- Jess is the girl. She speaks eight languages.  
**who** Jess is the ..... eight languages.
- This is the magazine. I bought it yesterday.  
**that** This is the ..... yesterday.
- Sam is the boy. He ran away from home.  
**who** Sam is the ..... from home.
- That's the hospital. I was born there.  
**where** That's the ..... born.
- That's the ring. Sophie found it yesterday.  
**that** That's the ring ..... yesterday.



## Типы определительных придаточных предложений

Различают два типа определительных придаточных предложений:

- ◆ **identifying relative clauses\*** – определительные придаточные предложения, которые несут информацию, необходимую для понимания смысла главного предложения. Такие придаточные предложения не выделяются запятыми. **Who, which** и **that** могут быть опущены в случае, когда они являются дополнениями к сказуемому в придаточном предложении.

Например:

People risk their lives. (Какие люди? Мы не знаем. Смысл предложения не ясен.)

People **who/that drive dangerously** risk their lives. (Какие люди? Те, кто опасно управляют автомобилем.)

The book was exciting. (Какая книга? Мы не знаем. Смысл предложения не ясен.)

The book **which/that- you lent me** was exciting. (Какая книга? Та, которую ты дал мне почитать.)

- ◆ **non-identifying relative clauses\*** – определительные придаточные предложения, которые несут дополнительную информацию и не существенны для понимания смысла главного предложения. Такие придаточные предложения выделяются запятыми. Относительные местоимения не могут быть опущены. Вместо **who** и **which** нельзя употребить **that**.

Например:

Mr Stevenson is my neighbour. (Смысл предложения ясен.)

Mr Stevenson, **who used to work in a bank**, is my neighbour. (Придаточное предложение несет дополнительную информацию.)

My car is a Fiat Uno. (Смысл предложения ясен.)

My car, **which I bought five years ago**, is a Fiat Uno. (Придаточное предложение несет дополнительную информацию.)

\* Чаще употребляются термины defining/non-defining relative clauses.

### 11 Fill in the relative pronoun. Put commas where necessary. Write I for identifying, NI for non-identifying and if the relative can be omitted or not.

- Mr Cross, *who* lives next door, broke his leg last week.
- That's the woman ..... drives the school bus.
- My sister ..... is called Sarah is younger than I am.
- The cake ..... was covered in chocolate was delicious.
- I know a boy ..... mother is a builder.
- This is the pen ..... he gave me for my birthday.
- Stuart ..... is older than me loves riding his bicycle.
- This book ..... is very old belongs to my father.
- Have you seen the cat ..... has only got three legs?
- Fred ..... is thirty years old got married last week.
- The girl ..... is sitting on the floor is called Emily.
- That car ..... is very expensive belongs to my Uncle George.

1	NI	not omitted
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
11		
12		

### 12 Choose the correct answer.

- An airship is an aircraft ...*B*... looks like a big balloon.  
A who                      B which                      C why
- The Titanic hit an iceberg. That's ..... it sank. .  
A where                      B why                      C which
- Guy Fawkes was a man ..... tried to blow up the English Houses of Parliament in 1605.  
A who                      B which                      C whose
- The rabbit is an animal ..... only eats plants and vegetables.  
A who                      B whose                      C that
- Athens is the city ..... the first modern Olympic Games took place.  
A that                      B which                      C where
- Edison was the man ..... invented the light bulb.  
A when                      B which                      C who
- 1966 was the year ..... England won the football World Cup.  
A when                      B which                      C who
- 1492 was the year ..... Columbus discovered America.  
A which                      B where                      C when
- Whales are mammals ..... can stay under water for 20 minutes without having to come up for air.  
A who                      B that                      C whose



**13 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 He's the man which writes songs for a lot of famous singers.
- 2 Where's the book I bought it last week?
- 3 That's the woman who's house is made of glass.
- 4 My sister, who she is 10 years old, is called Betty.
- 5 The reason when I was late was that I overslept.
- 6 The man I was talking to him is my uncle.
- 7 That's the hotel which I spent my holidays last year.
- 8 London, that is a big city, is the capital of England.

Revision Box

**14 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.**

**HIJACKERS ESCAPE**

Yesterday, a plane which (1) *...was flying ...* (fly) from London to New York was hijacked. The two hijackers (2) ..... (order) the pilot to fly the plane to Canada. At the time of the hijack most of the passengers (3) ..... (watch) the in-flight film while others (4) ..... (sleep). The flight attendants (5) ..... (get) ready to serve dinner when the two hijackers (6) ..... (appear). They (7) ..... (carry) guns and they (8) ..... (threaten) the passengers. When the plane finally (9) ..... (land) at the airport, the hijackers (10) ..... (manage) to escape. Luckily, nobody was hurt.

**15 Choose the correct answer.**

- 1 How long ...*B*... each other?  
A do they know      B have they known  
C did they know
- 2 She ..... with her parents at the moment.  
A is staying      B stays      C stayed
- 3 John ..... in the town centre and walks to work.  
A has lived      B lived      C lives
- 4 When they ..... young, they travelled a lot.  
A was      B were      C have been
- 5 I ..... that song before.  
A have never heard      B never hear  
C have always heard

ORAL  
Activity

Erica spent a weekend at a chalet in the Swiss Alps. Who did she meet there? Look at the notes and make sentences using *who* or *whose* as in the example.



- 1 Ron is a ski-instructor.  
*Erica met Ron who is a ski-instructor.*
- 2 Claire's husband owns the chalet.  
.....
- 3 Jack's son is only three but he can already ski.  
.....
- 4 Jessie works for a sports magazine.  
.....
- 5 Helen is a famous writer from New York.  
.....

WRITING  
Activity

Erica is writing a letter to her friend Monica. Fill in the gaps with the correct relative clause and then continue the letter using the notes from the Oral Activity.

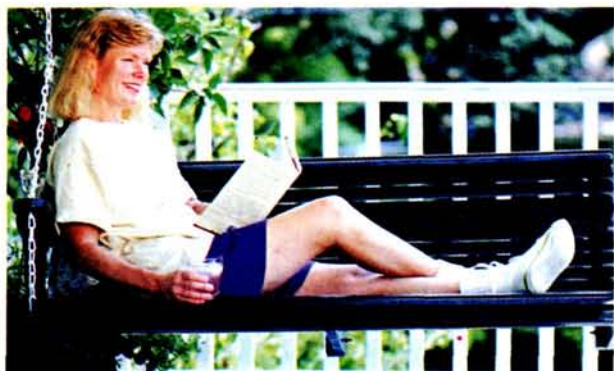
Dear Monica,

I'm writing to tell you my latest news. I've just been to the Alps! The reason (1) ..... I decided to spend a weekend in the Swiss Alps was that I wanted to improve my skiing. The day (2) ..... I arrived at the village it was snowing heavily, but it looked beautiful. The chalet (3) ..... I stayed was small and cosy.

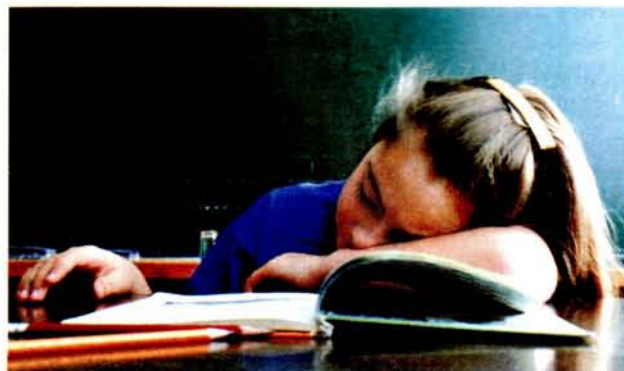
I met some interesting people there. I met Ron who .....



## Present Perfect Continuous



How long has Karen been reading the book?  
She **has been reading** the book for three hours.



She is tired. **Has she been playing?**  
No, she **hasn't**.  
She **has been studying** for two hours.

Настоящее совершенное продолженное время

Настоящее совершенное продолженное время (present perfect continuous\*) образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола **have / has**, причастия прошедшего времени глагола **to be (been)** и смыслового глагола, к которому добавляется **-ing**. Например: *He has been reading his newspaper for an hour.*

В вопросах **have / has** ставится перед подлежащим. Например: *Have you been living here long?*

В отрицаниях **not** ставится между **have / has** и **been**. Например: *They have not/haven't been waiting for a long time. She has not/hasn't been working here long.*

\* Употребляется также термин present perfect progressive.

Утверждение			
	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	have	've	} <b>been studying.</b>
He/She/It	has	's	
You/We/They	have	've	
Вопрос			
Have	I	} <b>been studying?</b>	
Has	he/she/it		
Have	you/we/they		
Отрицание			
	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	have not	haven't	} <b>been studying.</b>
He/She/It	has not	hasn't	
You/We/They	have not	haven't	

**1** In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

SA: *How long has Sam been working for this company?*  
SB: *He has been working for this company for two years.*

- Sam / work / for this company / two years
- Mary / teach / French / 1990
- the robbers / hide / in a farmhouse / a week
- Peter / make / model planes / 1992
- Julie / play / the guitar / four years
- the children / watch / TV / two hours

**2** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect continuous.

- What ...*have you been doing*... all week? (you/do)
- ..... his car all day? (Jim/repair)
- I ..... this book for weeks. (read)
- ..... a lot this year? (Ben/swim)
- Mr Bell is busy. He ..... on the phone for an hour. (talk)
- I've got a penfriend. I ..... to her for five years. (write)
- John won't pass his exams. He ..... any homework lately. (not/do)
- Molly ..... with me since last month. (stay)
- We ..... on this project since December. (work)
- Sam ..... how to ride a horse for three months. (learn)



Present Perfect Continuous

Употребление

Present perfect continuous употребляется для выражения:

- ♦ действий, которые начались в прошлом и продолжаются в настоящее время,



*He has been painting the house for three days. (Он начал красить дом три дня назад и красит его до сих пор.)*

- ♦ действий, которые завершились недавно и их результаты заметны (очевидны) сейчас.



*They're tired. They have been painting the garage door all morning. (Они только что закончили красить. Результат их действий очевиден. Краска на дверях еще не высохла, люди выглядят усталыми.)*

Примечание.

1 С глаголами, **не имеющими форм группы Continuous** (см. стр. 12), вместо present perfect continuous употребляется present perfect simple. Например: *I've known Sharon since we were at school together.* (А не: ~~*I've been knowing Sharon since we were at school together.*~~)

2 С глаголами **live, feel** и **work** можно употреблять как present perfect continuous, так и present perfect simple, при этом смысл предложения почти не изменяется.

Например: *He has been living/has lived here since 1994.*

Маркеры

К маркерам present perfect continuous относятся:

*for, since, all morning/afternoon/week/day* и т.д., *how long* (в вопросах).

3 Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 How long have you been waiting?	a He's been planting trees all day.
2 Bill is in the garden.	b That's why she's lost weight.
3 You've been studying all morning.	c It's been snowing all day.
4 Anne's been exercising a lot recently.	d She's been working hard all week.
5 It's cold outside.	e I think it's time to stop now.
6 Jenny's tired.	f For ten minutes.
7 We've been practising all afternoon.	g Lots of things. I've been busy.
8 What have you been doing since I last saw you?	h Why don't you take a break?

4 What have these people been doing? Make sentences using an appropriate verb in the present perfect continuous.

- Catherine went to the supermarket an hour ago. She's still there.  
*Catherine has been shopping for an hour.*
- My mum began cooking three hours ago. She hasn't finished yet.
- The teams started playing football twenty minutes ago. They haven't finished yet.
- The headmaster started speaking two hours ago. He hasn't stopped yet.
- Bill began building his house six months ago. He hasn't finished it yet.
- I started doing my homework three hours ago. I haven't finished it yet.

5 In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.

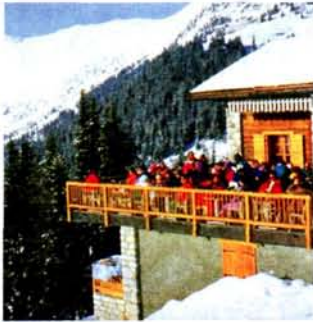
- SA: *What's your favourite hobby?*  
 SB: *Painting.*  
 SA: *How long have you been painting?*  
 SB: *I've been painting since I was fourteen years old.*

- favourite hobby
- best friend / know
- favourite TV programme / watch
- your address / live
- favourite magazine / read



**6** Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the present perfect continuous.

work, snow, exercise, play



- 1 Everything is white outside. It ...*has/s been snowing*... all night.
- 2 He is hot. He .....  
.....  
for two hours.



- 3 They are tired. They .....  
volleyball all afternoon.
- 4 He has got a headache. He .....  
hard all morning.

**7** Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous.

- A: Hi Liz. You look exhausted. 1) ...*Have you been working*... (you/work) overtime again?
- B: Yes, I have. I 2) ..... (help) my boss to update the files in the office all week. He 3) ..... (read) the files and I 4) ..... (write) down names, addresses, phone numbers and so on. What about you?
- A: Well, I 5) ..... (train) hard for the championship next week.
- B: I see! 6) ..... (you/lift) weights all day long?
- A: Yes, for two weeks. How's Sue? 7) ..... (she/study) for her exams?
- B: No, she hasn't. She 8) ..... (go) out every evening. I won't be surprised if she fails again!

Краткие ответы

Пример: Have you been working hard? Yes, I have.

Have you ...?	Yes, I/we have.	No, I/we haven't.
Has he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it has.	No, he/she/it hasn't.
Have they ...?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.

**8** Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: *Have people been taking photos since 1751?*  
SB: *No, they haven't. They've been taking photos since 1851.*

1851 	1894 
1 take photos/1751	2 listen to the radio/1824
1791 	1903 
3 ride bicycles/1771	4 travel by plane/1903
1450 	1856 
5 print books/1450	6 use fridges/1836
1878 	1809 
7 use light bulbs/1868	8 store food in tins/1709



Сопоставление Present Perfect Continuous и Present Perfect Simple

Present Perfect Continuous

Мы употребляем present perfect continuous:

- для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося в настоящее время,



Mr Davis **has been teaching** for six years. (Он начал работать учителем шесть лет назад и до сих пор им работает.)

- для того, чтобы подчеркнуть продолжительность действия.



She **has been painting** this picture for two hours. (Она начала рисовать два часа назад и до сих пор рисует.)

*emphasizes on duration*

Present Perfect Simple

Мы употребляем present perfect simple:

- для выражения действия, которое только что завершилось,



They **have just made** a deal.

- для того, чтобы подчеркнуть результат.



He **has painted** twenty pictures.

*emphasizes on quantity*

9 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.

- A: Amanda ...*has opened*... (open) a shop which sells newspapers and magazines.  
B: Really? Where is it?
- A: Where's Dan?  
B: He ..... (just/go) to the post office. He'll be back soon.
- A: Dave ..... (learn) to drive for six months.  
B: I know. He hasn't passed his test yet, though.
- A: I ..... (know) Alison for ten years.  
B: Well, I only met her last week.
- A: My uncle is painting his house again.  
B: Again? He ..... (paint) it three times this year already.
- A: Is Paul sleeping?  
B: Yes, he ..... (sleep) since 10 o'clock last night.

10 Mary is reading some letters. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.

- A ... I'm planning to buy a new house. I 1) ...*'ve been looking*... (look) for one for two months now.  
So far I 2) ..... (look) at ten houses, but I 3) ..... (not/find) one I liked.
- B ... My Spanish lessons are going very well. I 1) ..... (learn) Spanish for five months now and I love it. I 2) ..... (already/learn) a lot.
- C ... John 1) ..... (be) very busy recently. He 2) ..... (paint) the living-room and the bedrooms, but he 3) ..... (not/ start) painting the kitchen yet.



11

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple.



- A: Good evening and welcome to our show. Tonight we have Steve Connolly, the well-known director. We're glad to have you here Steve. What 1) *...have you been doing...* (do) lately?
- B: Well, I 2) ..... (finish) my latest film, "Double Crossing".
- A: That 3) ..... (just/come out) at the cinemas, hasn't it?
- B: Yes. The papers 4) ..... (give) it good reviews. I hope they'll like my next film too.
- A: 5) ..... (you/decide) what it'll be about?
- B: Yes, I 6) ..... (read) an exciting book over the last few weeks and I want to make it into a film. I 7) ..... (not/decide) where to film it yet, perhaps Moscow.
- A: Aha! Is it true that you 8) ..... (recently/start) learning Russian?
- B: Yes, I 9) ..... (study) it for three years now and I 10) ..... (visit) the country twice.
- A: Steve, thank you very much for being with us, and good luck with your new film.

12

Fill in the blanks with time expressions from the list below.

*since, all morning, already, how long, for, ever, yet, so far, just, always*

- The baby has been crying *...all morning...*
- Simon hasn't started school .....
- She has ..... washed the clothes, so they are still wet.
- Martha has ..... wanted to go to Mexico.

- She has been ill ..... a week.
- ..... has he been at home?
- It's very early, but Richard has ..... gone to work.
- I've sent ten party invitations .....
- I haven't spoken French ..... 1990.
- Have you ..... appeared on television?

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- Helen started learning French four months ago.  
**has** Helen *has been learning French* for four months.
- They haven't paid the bills yet.  
**still** They *still haven't paid* the bills.
- When did you buy your car?  
**since** How long is it *since you bought* your car?

13

Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- When did Paul sell his house?  
**since** How long is it *...since Paul sold his...* house?
- Mark started playing the guitar three years ago.  
**has** Mark ..... playing the guitar for three years.
- The children haven't finished their homework yet.  
**still** The children ..... their homework.
- When did you last decorate your living-room?  
**since** How long is it ..... your living-room?
- We haven't called the plumber yet.  
**still** We ..... the plumber.

14

Correct the mistakes.

- I have looked for him all day. I can't find him.
- He has trying to fix the car all morning.
- I have buying lots of food this week.
- I not have brought any shampoo.
- It has been snowed, but it's stopped now.
- How long they have been cleaning the house?
- I've been knowing Lillian for two years.
- Have you cried? Your eyes are red.



# Revision Box

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous, the present continuous or the present simple.

SUNDAY  
JUNE 13

Sunday 13/6/98

Dear Diary,

It's Sunday again. I 1) ...am... (be) so bored. I 2) ..... (not/know) what to do.  
Mum is in the kitchen. She 3) ..... (cook). She 4) ..... (cook) since eight o'clock this morning. Dad's in the garden. He 5) ..... (mow) the lawn for two hours.  
He 6) ..... (always/work) in the garden on Sunday mornings. Jimmy is in his room. He 7) ..... (do) his homework. He 8) ..... (study) for his history test for an hour. He 9) ..... (never/play) with me. Grandpa 10) ..... (read) his newspaper and Grandma 11) ..... (knit). She 12) ..... (knit) a jumper for me for two weeks. The jumper is yellow and I 13) ..... (hate) yellow. I 14) ..... (sit) alone in my bedroom all morning. You're my only companion...

**16** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A Today 1) ...is... (be) my father's birthday. We 2) ..... (have) a party tonight, but he 3) ..... (not/know) anything about it. I 4) ..... (phone) all of his friends yesterday and 5) ..... (ask) them to come to our house at 7 o'clock. It 6) ..... (be) a big surprise!
- B Samuel is a writer. He 1) ..... (write) children's books. At the moment he 2) ..... (write) a story about animals. He 3) ..... (write) another book when this one is finished.
- C My dog is called Ralph. I 1) ..... (have) him since he 2) ..... (be) a puppy. Ralph 3) ..... (escape) from our garden once when he was young, but luckily we 4) ..... (find) him. He 5) ..... (be) very frightened. I think that's why he 6) ..... (not/do) it again.

## ORAL Activity

The people below like doing different things. Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: How long have you been playing football?  
SB: I've been playing football for two years.  
SA: How many matches have you played so far?  
SB: I've played 60 matches.

Name	How long	How many
 1 Oliver Jones	play football two years	play 60 matches
 2 Jessica Hill	paint pictures 1993	paint 10 pictures
 3 Amanda Price	take photos nine months	take 300 photos
 4 Darren Mason	climb mountains 1992	climb 4 mountains
 5 Jim Brown	make pots six months	make 40 pots
 6 Fiona Carson	write books 1985	write 4 books

## WRITING Activity

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and write about the people and their hobbies. Begin like this:

Oliver Jones' hobby is playing football. He has been playing football for two years. He has played sixty matches so far. Jessica Hill's hobby is .....



Местоимения. Both / Neither – All / None. Выражение принадлежности

### Возвратные местоимения (Reflexive Pronouns)



She has hurt **herself**.

They made their costumes **themselves**.



#### Личные местоимения в именительном падеже

I  
you  
he  
she  
it  
we  
you  
they

#### Возвратные местоимения

myself  
yourself  
himself  
herself  
itself  
ourselves  
yourselves  
themselves

**Возвратные местоимения** употребляются:

- с такими глаголами, как **behave, burn, cut, enjoy, hurt, introduce, kill, look at, teach** и т.д., когда подлежащим и дополнением является одно и то же лицо,

подлежащее дополнение

Например: Andrew has hurt **himself**.

- с предлогом **by**, когда имеется в виду "один, в одиночестве", "самостоятельно", "без посторонней помощи",  
Например: Tim painted the kitchen **by himself**.  
(Никто не помогал ему красить кухню.)  
I like being **by myself** sometimes.  
(один, в одиночестве)

- с выражениями: **enjoy yourself** [хорошо проведи(те) время, развлеки(те)сь], **behave yourself** [веди(те) себя хорошо], **help yourself** [угощай(ся/тесь)],
- чтобы подчеркнуть существительное или местоимение в предложении. Обычно возвратные местоимения следуют непосредственно после этого существительного или местоимения либо ставятся в конце предложения. Например: **I myself** made this cake. (Именно я, а не кто-то другой, приготовил этот торт.) Peter met the **Queen herself**. (Он встретился именно с королевой, а не с кем-то другим.)  
Примечание. Обычно мы не употребляем возвратные местоимения с глаголами, обозначающими действия, которые люди выполняют, как правило, самостоятельно (**dress, wash, shave** и т.д.). Однако, когда мы хотим показать, что эти действия выполняются самостоятельно, несмотря на болезнь, возраст и т.п., мы употребляем возвратные местоимения. Например: Sarah got up and **dressed in a hurry**. Although Mrs Wood was ill, she managed to **dress herself**. Lucy is only two years old, but she can **wash herself**.

### 1 Fill in the gaps with the correct reflexive pronoun.



- He has hurt ...**himself**...
- They are enjoying .....
- She made the cake .....
- He may burn .....
- You must behave .....
- He went fishing by .....
- She can't dress .....



# Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

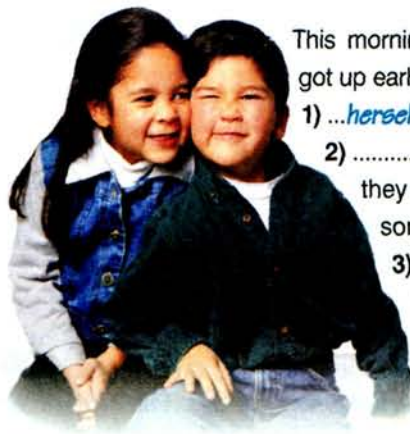
**2 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.**

COLUMN A	COLUMN B
1 Leo burnt	a myself at parties.
2 Babies can't	b by herself.
3 I always enjoy	c herself to knit.
4 Did you do your homework	d by himself?
5 Sandra taught	e himself on the oven.
6 My mother painted the house	f the manager himself.
7 Did William draw that picture	g by yourself?
8 We spoke to	h didn't hurt himself.
9 Billy fell off his bike but he	i by myself.
10 I don't need help. I can do it	j wash themselves.

**4 Fill in myself, yourself, herself, ourselves or themselves.**

- A: I like your dress, Kate. Did you make it 1) *yourself*...?  
 B: Well, I did most of it by 2) ....., but my mother helped with some of it.  
 A: My sister makes all of her clothes 3) ..... and she makes other things, too.  
 B: Things would be so much cheaper if we made everything 4) ..... My parents used to make a lot of things 5) ..... but they don't have the time any more.

**5 Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns.**



This morning, John and Helen got up early. Helen dressed 1) *herself*... and John washed 2) ..... Then, they decided to make some breakfast by 3) ..... While they were in the kitchen, John hurt 4) ..... when he tried to cut some bread with a sharp knife, and Helen burnt 5) ..... while she was making some hot tea. After that, they decided never to make breakfast by 6) ..... again!

## -selves/each other



Julie and Karen are looking at **themselves** in the mirror. (Джулия смотрит на себя в зеркало, и Карен смотрит на себя в зеркало.)



They are looking at **each other**. (Девочка и женщина смотрят друг на друга.)

**3 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate reflexive pronoun or each other.**

- I look at *myself*... in the mirror every morning.
- Tim's line is busy and Brian's line is busy too. I think they're talking to .....
- Fred and Jenny help ..... with their homework.
- The boys are having fun. They are enjoying .....
- "Help ..... to more coffee and biscuits."

**6 Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns.**

- Help *yourself*... to tea and cake!
- I made ..... a sandwich for lunch.
- Tommy bought ..... a present.
- Joe doesn't need help; he can fix his bicycle by .....
- Sandra painted her bedroom .....
- They taught ..... to drive.
- "Shall I help you?" "No, I can do it by ....."
- "We are going to a party." "Enjoy ....."!
- We built our house .....
- Terry and Annie put up the tent .....
- Grace is singing to ..... in the bath.
- Jack, I want you to behave ..... at school today.



Both/Neither – All/None



Both girls are wearing sunglasses.  
Neither girl is wearing a hat.



All of them are young men.  
None of them is a woman/are women.

◆ **Both** и **neither** употребляются применительно к двум объектам (людям, предметам и т.д.).

**Both** имеет утвердительное значение. За ним следует глагол во множественном числе.

Например: **Both girls/Both the girls/Both of the girls/Both of them are very good students.**

**Neither** имеет отрицательное значение. В утверждениях за ним может следовать глагол как в единственном, так и во множественном числе.

Например: **Neither book is interesting.** (A не: ~~Neither book isn't interesting.~~)

**Neither of the books/Neither of them is/are interesting.**

<b>BOTH +</b>	(the +) сущ. во мн. ч.	of the/these/my/your и т.п. + сущ. во мн. ч.	of us/them и т.п. + <b>are</b>
<b>NEITHER +</b>	сущ. в ед. ч. + <b>is</b>	of the/these/my/your и т.п. + сущ. во мн. ч.	of us/them и т.п. + <b>is/are</b>

◆ **All** и **none** употребляются применительно к трем и более объектам.

**All** имеет утвердительное значение. За ним следует глагол во множественном числе.

Например: **All the students/All of the students/All of them have studied for the test.**

**None** имеет отрицательное значение. В утверждениях за ним может следовать глагол как в единственном, так и во множественном числе.

Например: **None of these cars is/are cheap.** (A не: ~~None of these cars isn't/aren't cheap.~~)

<b>ALL +</b>	(the +) сущ. во мн. ч.	of the/these/my/your и т.п. + сущ. во мн. ч.	of us/them и т.п. + <b>are</b>
<b>NONE +</b>		of the/these/my/your и т.п. + сущ. во мн. ч.	of us/them и т.п. + <b>is/are</b>

**Both/All** могут употребляться:

а) после глагола **to be**, Например: **They were both tired. They are all here.**

б) после вспомогательного глагола, но перед смысловым глаголом,

Например: **They have both finished dinner. They will all come to the party.**

в) в начале предложения. Например: **Both women are tall. All of the students passed the test.**



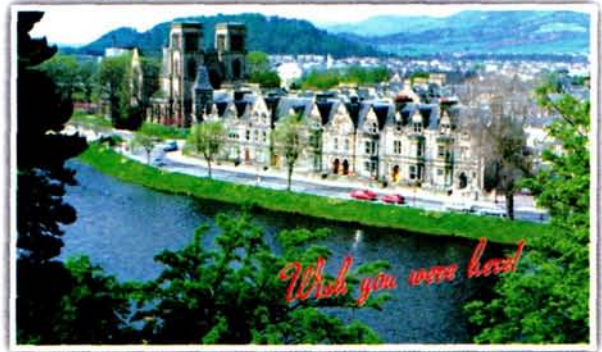
Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

**7** Look at the pictures and describe them using *all* or *both* in as many ways as possible, as in the example.

e.g. *These are all strawberries. All of them are strawberries. They are all strawberries.*



**9** Fill in the gaps with *both*, *all*, *neither* or *none*.



- A: Have you seen Beth and Angela recently?  
 B: No. I haven't seen them since last week.  
 A: 1) *...Neither...* of them has phoned me since Wednesday.  
 B: I tried to phone them yesterday, but no one was at home.  
 A: I think they have 2) ..... gone away on holiday, but I'm not sure.  
 B: Did you phone any of their friends?  
 A: Yes, I phoned 3) ..... of them, but 4) ..... of them knows where Beth and Angela are.  
 B: Here's the postman. Look! There's a postcard here. It's from Beth and Angela. They are 5) ..... in Scotland. 6) ..... of them is having a good time, though, because it's raining there.  
 A: When are they coming back?  
 B: They are coming back next Sunday.

**8** Fill in the gaps using *both/neither* of *us/them*.

- George and Peter went to the cinema to see a film. *...Neither of them...* enjoyed it, though, because it was quite boring.
- My sister and I are twins. .... have the same colour hair.
- I tried to open the cupboard, then James tried to open it, but ..... could do it because it was stuck.
- I made a chocolate cake and a cherry cake, but ..... tasted good because I forgot to add the sugar!
- Samantha and Kate were bridesmaids at a wedding last week. .... looked lovely in their beautiful dresses.
- I phoned Bill and Tom yesterday. I think ..... were out because no one answered the telephone.

**10** Fill in the gaps with *both*, *all*, *neither* or *none*.

- A: Would you like an apple or an orange?  
 B: *Neither*. I'd like a pear, please.
- A: I looked for Helen and Jane, but ..... of them were there.  
 B: They have ..... gone shopping.
- A: I've got lots of skirts but ..... of them fit me.  
 B: Well, buy some new ones.
- A: I'm waiting for three friends. .... of them are late!  
 B: I'm sure they will be here soon.
- A: My sisters, Ann and Julie, are ..... teachers.  
 B: Really? I'm a teacher, too.
- A: There were lots of birds in the garden this morning.  
 B: Really? They have ..... gone now.
- A: Steve and Dave had an accident yesterday.  
 B: Are they ..... in hospital?  
 A: No. Luckily, ..... of them were hurt.



Both ... and / Neither ... nor



The lion is a wild animal.  
The tiger is a wild animal, too.

**Both** the lion and the tiger are wild animals.  
The lion doesn't eat grass.  
The tiger doesn't eat grass, either.  
**Neither** the lion nor the tiger eats grass.

◆ **Both ... and** используется для соединения подлежащих двух предложений в одном предложении с утвердительным значением. В этом предложении глагол употребляется во множественном числе.

Например: **Both Bob and Paul are from Scotland.**

◆ **Neither ... nor** используется для соединения подлежащих двух предложений в одном предложении с отрицательным значением. В этом предложении глагол всегда употребляется в утвердительной форме и согласуется в числе со вторым подлежащим.

Например: **Neither Sheila nor Mary wants to travel abroad.** (A не: ~~Neither Sheila nor Mary don't want to travel abroad.~~)

11

**Rewrite the sentences using both...and or neither...nor.**

- Barry works at the bank. Mark works at the bank, too.  
*Both Barry and Mark work at the bank.*
- Jenny is from Ireland. Mark is from Ireland, too.  
.....
- I don't like bananas and Marie doesn't like bananas, either.  
.....
- Jane doesn't go to school any more and her sister doesn't, either.  
.....
- My mother enjoys skiing. I enjoy skiing, too.  
.....
- Lucy didn't spend her holidays at home. Bob didn't, either.  
.....
- Susan went on holiday to Spain last year. Emily went there, too.  
.....
- Fred hasn't got long hair and Stuart hasn't got long hair, either.  
.....

12

**Look at the pictures and the prompts given and compare the two jobs (businessman/pilot) using both...and or neither...nor.**

e.g. *Both businessmen and pilots work hard.*



- work hard
- spend much time with their families
- earn a lot of money
- have much free time
- meet a lot of people
- make important decisions
- have stressful jobs

13

**Complete the article below using your notes from ex. 12.**

**Your choice: PILOT or BUSINESSMAN?**

*This week, we are looking at two different jobs which have very similar advantages and disadvantages: that of a pilot and a businessman.*

*Both businessmen and pilots work very hard.* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Выражение принадлежности



Helen is **Peter and Jane's** mother. She is **their** mother. **Jane's** bicycle is red. The bicycle is **hers**.



Bob and Ted have got briefcases. These are **Bob's and Ted's** briefcases.

Для выражения принадлежности и отношения можно использовать притяжательный падеж (possessive case), предлог "of", притяжательные местоимения (possessive adjectives) и абсолютную форму притяжательных местоимений (possessive pronouns).

◆ Притяжательный падеж (обычно одушевленных существительных) образуется:

- с помощью 's для существительных в единственном числе, Например: Ken's car
- с помощью ' для существительных во множественном числе, оканчивающихся на -s, Например: the girls' dresses, the birds' nests
- с помощью 's для существительных, имеющих особую форму множественного числа, Например: the women's clothes
- путем прибавления 's к последнему существительному, когда одна и та же вещь принадлежит двум или более людям, Например: Gina and Tom's car (Машина принадлежит им обоим.)
- путем прибавления 's к каждому существительному, когда каждый из двух и более людей обладает своей вещью данного типа. Например: Claire's and Kate's uniforms (У каждой из девочек есть своя униформа.)

◆ Для неодушевленных существительных принадлежность обычно выражается с помощью предлога of (этот предлог употребляется также и с одушевленными существительными). Например: the roof of the house

(А не: ~~the house's roof~~, поскольку "house" – неодушевленное существительное.)

◆ При указании места и времени притяжательный падеж образуется так:

- **обстоятельство места (магазин, место работы и т.д.) + 's**, Например: at the **butcher's** (магазин)
- **выражение длительности + 's или '**. Например: a **day's** walk/two **hours'** drive

Possessive Adjectives		Possessive Pronouns	
my	our	mine	ours
your	your	yours	yours
his	their	his	theirs
her		hers	
its		—	

После притяжательных местоимений следует существительное, после абсолютной формы притяжательных местоимений – нет.

Например: This is **her** car. It's black. The black car is **hers**.

14 Join the two parts with the correct form of the possessive case\*.

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 the bags — the women | 6 the manager — the hotel |
| 2 the top — the hill   | 7 the man — the trousers  |
| 3 the car — the roof   | 8 the toys — the children |
| 4 the shop — the owner | 9 the name — the street   |
| 5 the boys — the caps  | 10 the clothes — the baby |

\* Здесь и далее в формулировках заданий под "possessive case" следует понимать собственно притяжательный падеж, а также выражение принадлежности при помощи предлога "of".

15 Rewrite the part of each sentence which is in bold using the possessive case, as in the example.

- I'll meet you **in an hour**. = in an *hour's* time
- From the airport, the hotel is **a drive of four hours**. = four ..... drive
- The advert is **in the paper** today. = in ..... paper
- I heard it **on the news** yesterday. = on ..... news
- It's **on the menu** this week. = this ..... menu
- The results** this year are better. = this ..... results
- I will make the phone call **in five minutes**. = in ..... time
- That is **the magazine** from last month. = last ..... magazine

*its* = притяжательное местоимение

Например: The dog is carrying **its** bowl.

*it's* = *it is* или *it has* Например: **It's** (*it is*) raining hard today. Let's go outside. **It's** (*it has*) stopped raining.

16 Fill in the gaps with *it's* or *its*.

- The dog buried ...*its*... bone in the garden.
- The book isn't mine, ..... my brother's.
- I can't wear this jumper because ..... got a hole in it.
- The bird built ..... nest in the tree in our garden.
- ..... very cold today. I think it might snow.
- It was raining earlier but ..... stopped now.
- ..... quite a good novel but I didn't enjoy the end very much.
- The cat was cleaning ..... paws.



**17** Look at the objects and say what belongs to each person using the possessive case.

 <b>Bob</b> 1 ... <i>Bob's</i> ... trumpet	 <b>Julie and Helen</b> 2 ..... pencils
 <b>Mary</b> ..... and ..... <b>Doug</b> hats 3 ..... and ..... hats	 <b>Tom and Jill</b> 4 ..... toys
 <b>Paul</b> 5 ..... shirts	 <b>Susan</b> 6 ..... shoes

Личные местоимения в именительном падеже	Личные местоимения в объектном падеже
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
you	you
they	them

Личные местоимения в объектном падеже употребляются после глаголов и предлогов как дополнения, а личные местоимения в именительном падеже – перед глаголами как подлежащие. Например: *He is walking barefoot. Look at him!*

**18** Fill in the appropriate possessive adjective or pronoun (i.e. subject, object, reflexive or possessive).

- 1 A: Do you go to the village school?  
 B: No, *...* don't. My sister and ..... go to the school in town. .... go there by bus

- in the morning and ..... mother brings ..... back in the car every afternoon.
- 2 A: Whose are these football boots? Are they yours?  
 B: Yes, ..... are .....
- 3 A: Where are your parents?  
 B: ..... have gone shopping. .... have taken ..... brother with .....
- 4 A: What did you and Jim do last night?  
 B: ..... went to the cinema.  
 A: What did ..... see?  
 B: The new James Bond film.  
 A: Was ..... good?  
 B: Yes, ..... was excellent. Both of ..... enjoyed .....
- 5 A: ..... 'm going to a party tonight but ..... 've got nothing to wear.  
 B: Don't worry, ..... 'll give ..... one of ..... dresses to wear.  
 A: Thanks. Can ..... take ..... car too?  
 B: ..... 'm afraid ..... can't. .... 's at the garage. Anyway, enjoy ..... at the party!
- 6 A: Have you seen Georgia and Julian recently?  
 B: No, but I wrote a letter to ..... last week.  
 A: Have ..... written back to ..... ?  
 B: Not yet, but I'm sure ..... will.
- 7 A: Where are you going?  
 B: I'm going shopping with Pauline. Do ..... want to come with ..... ?  
 A: Yes, please. .... would love to come.
- 8 A: Edward has hurt ..... is in hospital.  
 B: Really? Let's go and visit ..... then.

**19** Underline the correct item.

- 1 Oh dear! I've left my/mine wallet at home.
- 2 Ours/Our video recorder is not working. Grandmother is lending us her/hers for a few days.
- 3 Mine/My passport has expired. I need to get a new one.
- 4 The Smiths' house is the third from the left. And the Porsche that is parked outside is their/theirs, too.
- 5 John and Patrick aren't at home but theirs/their cars are in the garage.
- 6 Don't wash your hair with that shampoo. It's mine/my.
- 7 Is that Danielle's coat? No, it isn't. Her/Hers is the one with the red buttons on the front.
- 8 Rita has left her/hers job as a shop assistant because she wants to be a singer.
- 9 Don't use my pen, please. Use yours/your instead.
- 10 Is Sue Parker your/yours cousin? I've known her for months but she has never told me that.



**20 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Neither Nora nor Peter didn't enjoy the party.
- 2 This is ours dog.
- 3 Neither Andy and Jane lives in Scotland.
- 4 This is Freds' watch.
- 5 We enjoyed us on holiday last year.
- 6 Is this him suitcase?
- 7 These are Johns slippers.
- 8 Jim, Bob and Tim are both doctors.

# Revision Box

**21 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple, past continuous, present perfect simple, present simple or present continuous.**

When my grandfather 1) ...*was*... (be) a young boy, he 2) ..... (like) watching the ships in the harbour of the town where he 3) ..... (live). A few years later, he 4) ..... (look) for a job when he 5) ..... (find) one on one of the ships in the harbour and he 6) ..... (become) a sailor. My grandfather 7) ..... (just/retire) and he 8) ..... (enjoy) his free time. Now, he 9) ..... (work) in his garden and he 10) ..... (do) all the things he couldn't do when he 11) ..... (work).

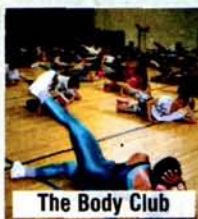
**22 Choose the correct answer.**

- 1 Jill and Anne ...*C*... tennis now.  
A were playing B play C are playing
- 2 ..... we go out for a meal on Saturday night?  
A Will B Shall C Are
- 3 Look out! You ..... hit your head on the cupboard door.  
A are going to B won't C shall
- 4 We ..... for Rome tomorrow morning.  
A are leaving B left C were leaving
- 5 People ..... to the radio a lot sixty years ago.  
A were listening B have listened C used to listen
- 6 Elizabeth Wilson is the woman ..... won the competition.  
A which B who C whose

## ORAL Activity

Look at the table and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a sauna.



• qualified instructors	✓	✓
• sauna	✗	✗
• less than £40 a month	✓	✓
• aerobics classes	✓	✓
• a large car park	✗	✗
• near the city centre	✓	✓
• a swimming-pool	✗	✗

## WRITING Activity

Look at the table in the Oral Activity again and complete the article about the Body Club and the Fitness Centre.

Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre are excellent sports centres in our neighbourhood. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors. ....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Глаголы **must, can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should** и **ought\*** называются **модальными глаголами (modal verbs)**, или **модальными вспомогательными глаголами\*\*** (modal auxiliary verbs). Они выражают возможность, долженствование, необходимость и т.п.

Основные характеристики модальных глаголов:

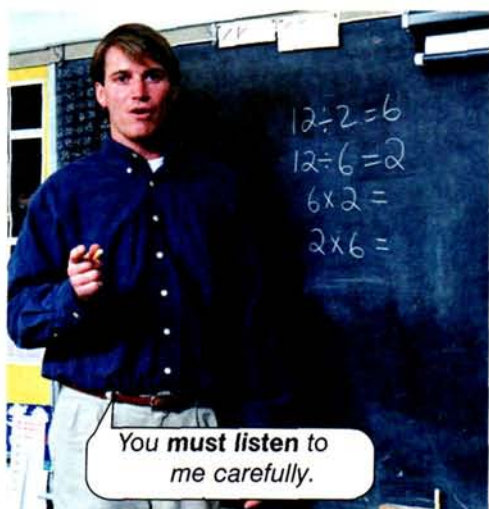
- ◆ к ним не добавляется -s, -ing и -ed, Например: *He can cook.* (А не: ~~He cans cook.~~)
- ◆ вопросы, отрицания и краткие ответы с модальными глаголами строятся без глагола do в качестве вспомогательного, Например: *May I go now?* (А не: ~~Do I may go now?~~)  
*They shouldn't make any noise.* (А не: ~~They don't should make any noise.~~)
- ◆ за ними следует инфинитив без частицы to (за исключением глагола ought, который употребляется с "to"-инфинитивом), Например: *You must fasten your seat-belt.* (А не: ~~You must to fasten your seat belt.~~)
- ◆ они не образуют всех временных форм, как другие глаголы. Обычно они имеют форму настоящего и прошедшего времени.  
Например: *He can play water polo.* (настоящее время) *He could ski when he was young.* (прошедшее время)

\* Часто к модальным глаголам относят не "ought", а сочетание "ought to".

\*\* В российской школе преподавания модальные глаголы не относят к вспомогательным глаголам.

## Must – Have to

(долженствование – необходимость – совет)



- ◆ **Must** и **have to** выражают долженствование (obligation) и необходимость (necessity).

Например: *You must come home early.*

*I have to be at the office at nine o'clock.*

- ◆ **Must** употребляется только в настоящем времени. В других временных формах употребляется **have to**.

Например: *I'll have to work late tomorrow.*

*He had to leave early yesterday.*

(А не: ~~He must leave early yesterday.~~)

- ◆ **Must** употребляется также, когда надо дать совет (advice).

Например: *You must talk to your brother about it.*

1

Clare has got a cold. She has gone to the doctor's. Look at the prompts and say what the doctor advises her (not) to do.

- stay in bed

*You must stay in bed.*



- go to the office for three days



- take some medicine



- drink a lot of water



- eat any ice-cream



- take your temperature twice a day



- call me if you have a high temperature



2

Look at the prompts given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: *Why did he go to the supermarket yesterday?*

SB: *Because he had to do some shopping.*

- 1 he / go to the supermarket / do some shopping
- 2 she / go to the post office / post some letters
- 3 they / call the babysitter / attend a meeting
- 4 he / call a taxi / go to the airport
- 5 she / buy a dictionary / translate a novel
- 6 they / go to a restaurant / entertain some clients



**3** Fill in the gaps with *don't/doesn't have to, didn't have to or won't have to*.

- 1 Tomorrow is Saturday, so I ...*won't have to*... go to school.
- 2 I've already finished my project, so I ..... do it in the holidays.
- 3 We bought a takeaway pizza last night, so we ..... cook dinner.
- 4 Tom and Mary have got a washing-machine, so they ..... go to the laundrette.
- 5 Steve passed his driving test, so he ..... take it again.
- 6 Sally is very rich, so she ..... work.
- 7 They bought tickets in advance, so they ..... wait in the queue.
- 8 Jane's mother wakes her up, so she ..... use an alarm clock.
- 9 I have already read the book, so I ..... read it again.
- 10 Sam never makes a mess, so he ..... tidy his room very often.

**4** Fill in the gaps with *mustn't or needn't/don't have to*.

- 1 A: You ...*mustn't*... do that again! It was very naughty!  
B: I'm sorry.
- 2 A: Shall I put some petrol in the car?  
B: No, you ..... I did it this morning.
- 3 A: You ..... be late tonight.  
B: I won't. I'll be home early.
- 4 A: Shall I give you a lift?  
B: No, you ..... I'll go by taxi.
- 5 A: You ..... forget to pay the bills today.  
B: I've already done it.
- 6 A: You ..... lose the money I gave you.  
B: I'll put it in a safe place.
- 7 A: You ..... buy a gift for Daisy's birthday.  
B: Alright. I'll just send a card.
- 8 A: Shall we take a picnic with us on Saturday?  
B: No, we ..... We're going to eat at a restaurant.

**Mustn't – Needn't**

(запрет – отсутствие необходимости)



You *mustn't* be late again, Miss Jones.



You *needn't* iron the shirt. I'll do it.

◆ **Must not / Mustn't** (вам/тебе не разрешается, это против правил) выражает запрет (prohibition).

Например: You *mustn't* park here.  
(Это против правил.)

◆ **Needn't** (это не является необходимым) выражает отсутствие необходимости (lack of necessity). Вместо *needn't* можно употреблять **don't / doesn't have to**, при этом смысл выражения не изменяется.

Например: You *needn't/don't have to* buy me a gift.  
(У тебя нет необходимости покупать мне подарок.)

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

Внимательно посмотрите на эти группы предложений. В каждой группе предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- 1 Parking your car in this area is forbidden.  
**must** You *must not park your car* in this area.
- 2 It isn't necessary to buy any meat. We've got plenty.  
**needn't** You *needn't buy any* meat. We've got plenty.  
**have** You *don't have to buy* any meat. We've got plenty.
- 3 Is it necessary for you to call him?  
**have** Do you *have to call* him?

**5** Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 It isn't necessary to wait for us.  
**have** You ...*don't have to wait*... for us.
- 2 Taking pictures inside the museum is forbidden.  
**must** You ..... inside the museum.
- 3 Is it necessary for you to leave so early?  
**have** Do ..... so early?
- 4 It isn't necessary to go by taxi. I'll give you a lift.  
**needn't** You ..... by taxi.  
I'll give you a lift.
- 5 Keeping pets in the building is forbidden.  
**must** You ..... in the building.
- 6 It isn't necessary to water the flowers.  
**have** You ..... the flowers.



Can – Could – Be able to (способность)



Peter can read but his sister, Rose, can't.



Mrs Turner could jog before she had the accident.



Rachel was able to reach the top of the mountain.

- ◆ **Can** выражает способность (ability), а **can't** – неспособность (lack of ability) (с)делать что-то в настоящем. Например: Kate can speak a foreign language. Tim can't play the piano.
- ◆ **Could** выражает способность (с)делать что-то в прошлом вообще (ability in the past). Например: Alan could sing very well when he was young. (Но сейчас уже не может.)
- ◆ **Was / Were able to** (удалось сделать) выражает способность (с)делать что-то в конкретной ситуации в прошлом. Например: It was a very difficult test, but Meryl was able to answer all the questions. (Ей удалось ответить на все вопросы.)
- ◆ **Couldn't** выражает неспособность (с)делать что-то в прошлом вообще либо в конкретной ситуации (lack of ability in the past). Например: My little brother couldn't ride a bicycle when he was two. (Вообще, а не в конкретной ситуации.) Helen tried but she couldn't open the door. (Ей не удалось открыть двери – неспособность в конкретной ситуации.)

С глаголами **see, hear, feel, smell, taste, understand, remember, guess** и т.п. мы употребляем **could** (а не ~~was / were able to~~).

Например: Marian could feel that something was wrong the moment she entered the room. (А не: ~~Marian was able to feel that...~~)

Can имеет формы только настоящего и прошедшего времени. В других временных формах мы употребляем **be able to**. Например: I hope I'll be able to take you out to dinner next week.

**6** Look at the prompts given and, in pairs, make sentences, as in the example.

SA: They can't enjoy much peace and quiet now.  
SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to enjoy some peace and quiet.



**NOW**

- enjoy much peace and quiet
- go out in the evenings
- do lots of sports
- visit their friends often
- go to the theatre with their friends



**7** Fill in the gaps with **can/can't, could/couldn't or was/were able to**.

- 1 When I arrived, I ...could... see a few people waiting for the train.
- 2 After saving their money for ten years, they ..... buy a house for themselves.
- 3 Sam and Beth ..... speak Italian fluently, can't they?
- 4 ..... you tie your shoelaces when you were four years old?
- 5 It was a very tricky question but Paul ..... answer it.
- 6 I ..... hear what they were saying because the music was too loud.
- 7 Although it was difficult, the children ..... build a tree house.
- 8 Susan ..... come to the phone. She's busy.



**8** Fill in the gaps with *could*, *couldn't* or *was able to*.

I was walking in the woods one evening when something terrible happened. I slipped and fell down a hill into a stream. It was quite dark and I 1) *...couldn't...* see very well. I called for help but no one 2) ..... hear me. I had hurt my ankle and I 3) ..... walk very easily, but I tried. After some time, I 4) ..... start going up the hill again.

It was late and I was cold and wet. I wanted to go home, but it was too far to walk. It took me a long time, but eventually I reached the edge of the woods. There was a house there, so I 5) ..... call my father. He came in the car and took me home. The following day, the doctor came and examined my ankle. I had to stay in bed for two days. It was a week before I 6) ..... walk properly again.

**9** Choose the correct answer.

- I *...A...* understand what he was saying because he was speaking Spanish.  
A couldn't      B can't      C can
- Steven ..... walk when he was one year old.  
A can't      B can      C could
- The door was locked so I ..... go inside.  
A will be able to      B wasn't able to      C can
- We ..... go out for a meal since we sold the car.  
A has been able to      B haven't been able to      C can
- When I am older, I ..... live by myself.  
A can't      B have been able to      C will be able to
- I ..... run faster than my brother now.  
A will be able to      B could      C can
- Jenny ..... type since she went to college.  
A has been able to      B can      C can't
- I ..... hear you very well. Please speak louder.  
A am able to      B can      C can't
- We arrived at the shop just as it was closing, so we ..... do our shopping.  
A are able to      B can      C couldn't
- My brother ..... drive yet. He's too young.  
A can      B can't      C couldn't

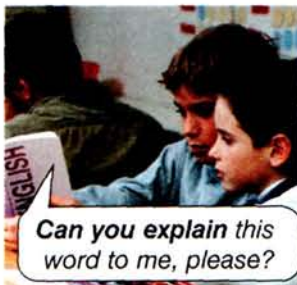
**Can – Could**  
(позволение – просьба – предложение)

**Can** и **could** употребляются также для того, чтобы:

- ♦ попросить разрешения, позволения (permission). **Could** – более официально и вежливо, чем **can**,



- ♦ выразить просьбу (request). **Could** – более вежливо, чем **can**,



- ♦ сделать предложение (suggestion).



**10** What do **can** and **could** express in each sentence?

- We **can** watch the new show on TV. (*suggestion*)
- It was cold last Saturday so we **couldn't** go on a picnic.
- Can** I go camping with my friends at the weekend?
- If you are not feeling well, you **could** stay at home.
- Could** you shut the window, please?
- Could** I speak to you for a moment, please?
- Can** you call Greg and tell him I'll be late?



# Can – Can't

(разрешение – отказ)

◆ **Can** употребляется также для того, чтобы позволить, дать разрешение (give permission) сделать что-либо.

Например: You **can** sit here.

◆ **Can't** употребляется также для того, чтобы отказать в разрешении (refuse permission).

Например: You **can't** use this computer.

11

Look at the pictures and make sentences using **can** or **can't**.

e.g. You **can't** take photographs here.

		
1 take photographs	2 smoke	3 park
		
4 cross the road	5 ride a bicycle	6 have coffee

12

Fill in the gaps with **can**, **can't** or **could**. Then, say what they express in each sentence.

- A: Mum, ...**can**... I go on holiday with my friends this year? (*asking for permission*)  
B: I'm afraid you ..... You're too young.
- A: Sir, I need to leave work early tonight, if that's possible.  
B: You ..... leave early if you finish all your work first.
- A: My mum always said that I was a clever child.  
B: What do you mean?  
A: Well, I ..... read and write when I was four years old.
- A: It's raining, so we ..... go out tonight.  
B: Well, we'll stay in then.  
A: But, I want to do something nice. I'm bored.  
B: We ..... play chess.
- A: Excuse me?  
B: Yes.  
A: ..... you tell me the time, please?  
B: Yes, it's almost two o'clock.

- A: What skills do you have?  
B: Well, I ..... use computers and I ..... speak two foreign languages.
- A: What shall we buy Mum for her birthday?  
B: We ..... get a big box of chocolates.
- A: It's hot in here. .... you open the window, please?  
B: Of course.
- A: I'm going to the shops. I won't be long.  
B: Alright.  
A: Do you want anything?  
B: Yes. .... you get me a magazine?

# Must – Can't

(предположение)



They **must** be lost.



They **can't** be at home.

◆ **Must** употребляется также для выражения утвердительных, логически обоснованных предположений (positive logical assumptions).

Например: Jason **must** be at work.

(Я уверен, что он на работе.)

◆ **Can't** употребляется также для выражения отрицательных, логически обоснованных предположений (negative logical assumptions).

Например: Sam **can't** know about this.

(Я уверен, что он не знает об этом.)

(А не: ~~Sam mustn't know about this.~~)

13

Fill in the gaps with **must** or **can't**.

- A: Wow! Look at that man in the beautiful car.  
B: Yes, he ...**must**... be very rich.
- A: I passed my exam!  
B: Congratulations. You ..... be very happy.
- A: Aunt Sheila's dog died.  
B: Oh no. She ..... be very sad.
- A: That woman always wears smart clothes and lots of jewellery.  
B: I know. She ..... be poor.
- A: I've been working all day without a break.  
B: Sit down, you ..... be really tired.
- A: I've finished tidying my room. I'm ready to leave now.  
B: You ..... be ready so soon! You only started ten minutes ago!



**14** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 You can go out until you finish eating.
- 2 Dad, must I borrow the car, please?
- 3 I haven't be able to write the letter yet.
- 4 He can't run long distances when he was a boy.
- 5 You mustn't wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
- 6 He drives a Porsche. He must be poor.

**Revision Box**

**15** Fill in the gaps with the present simple, present continuous, past simple, present perfect, future simple or be going to.



Charles Maxwell 1) ...works... (work) in a bank in the centre of London. At the moment he 2) ..... (look) for a new house. He 3) ..... (live) with his parents all of his life but now he 4) ..... (want) to move because he 5) ..... (decide) to get married. So far, he 6) ..... (look) at ten houses, but he 7) ..... (not/like) any of them. He 8) ..... (see) another one later today. He thinks he 9) ..... (like) it because he 10) ..... (already/see) a photograph of it and it 11) ..... (be) beautiful. Good luck, Charles!

**ORAL Activity**

Alan Roland has just become the director of the company he works for. Look at the information below and talk about the changes in Alan's life, using the modal verbs in the list.

has to - will have to - needn't/doesn't have to - can - will be able to - won't be able to

e.g. Alan has to go to work earlier now.



Alan

Mary (wife)

Rick and Kate (children)

- go to work earlier now
- drive to work (a chauffeur picks him up)
- work overtime sometimes now
- send the children to a better school next year
- Mary not work any more (they have enough money)
- move to a bigger house next month
- take a family holiday this year (Alan has too much work)

**WRITING Activity**

Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and complete the letter that Alan has sent to his friend.

Dear Keith,

I'm writing to tell you that I got a promotion last month. I am the director of the company now, so our life has changed in a number of ways.

To begin with, I have to go to work earlier. ....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

### Инфинитив



*They want to spend their life together.  
They would like to have two children.  
They may buy a car next year.*

Различают два типа инфинитива:

- а) **"to"-инфинитив** (to - infinitive) – это корневая (основная) форма глагола с частицей to, Например: to stay, to go
- б) **инфинитив без to**, или **"голый" инфинитив** (bare infinitive), – это корневая (основная) форма глагола. Например: stay, go

### Мы употребляем "to"-инфинитив:

- ◆ после глаголов *advise, agree, decide, expect, hope, manage, offer, promise, refuse, seem, want* и т.п.,  
Например: He **refused to answer** my question.
- ◆ после **be + прилагательное** (*glad, happy, nice, sorry* и т.п.),  
Например: It is **nice to be** back home.  
*Jack will be glad to see you.*
- ◆ после таких глаголов, как *know, learn, remember, ask, want to know* и т.п., если за ними следует вопросительное слово (*who, what, where, how* и т.п.). В утверждениях после **"why"** следует не инфинитив, а подлежащее + глагол,  
Например: I don't **know how to answer** this question.  
**Но** I didn't **know why he was crying**.
- ◆ со словами **too** и **enough**,  
Например: It's **too cold to go** outside.  
*Joe isn't old enough to vote.*
- ◆ для того, чтобы выразить цель.  
Например: I went to the florist's **to buy** some flowers.

### Мы употребляем инфинитив без to:

- ◆ после **модальных глаголов** (*can, must* и т.д.),  
Например: You **can go** home now.
- ◆ после глаголов **let** и **make** (в значении "заставлять").  
Например: My parents **let me have** a party for my birthday last month.

### 1

Write what the following words/phrases are followed by: **to - infinitive (T.I.)** or **bare infinitive (B.I.)**.

- |             |             |                 |       |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------|
| 1 could +   | <i>B.I.</i> | 9 make sb +     | ..... |
| 2 agree +   | .....       | 10 seem +       | ..... |
| 3 let +     | .....       | 11 expect +     | ..... |
| 4 must +    | .....       | 12 can't +      | ..... |
| 5 want +    | .....       | 13 it is nice + | ..... |
| 6 learn +   | .....       | 14 hope +       | ..... |
| 7 decide +  | .....       | 15 may +        | ..... |
| 8 promise + | .....       | 16 advise +     | ..... |

### 2

In pairs, say what your parents (don't) let or (don't) make you do using the prompts below.

SA: *My parents don't let me watch TV late at night.*  
SB: *My parents make me study hard.*

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| • watch TV late at night       | • tidy my room                 |
| • study hard                   | • invite friends home          |
| • go to parties at the weekend | • have breakfast every morning |
| • wear anything I want         | • play music loud              |

### 3

Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form.

*climb, help, go, open, buy, post, stay, take, wash, ask*

- 1 I think I will ...*buy*... some flowers for my mother.
- 2 Bill went to the post office ..... some letters.
- 3 Let me ..... you with your homework.
- 4 I want ..... a mountain before I'm thirty.
- 5 We must ..... the car today. It's very dirty.
- 6 He's too young ..... in the house alone.
- 7 I don't know how ..... the windows in this room.
- 8 I couldn't ..... on holiday last summer.
- 9 Can I ..... you a question, please?
- 10 They made her ..... the money out of the safe.



# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## "Субъект инфинитива"



I want to play with the yellow ball.



I want you to draw a picture.

◆ "Субъект инфинитива" (лицо или предмет, действие которого выражает инфинитив) ставится перед инфинитивом. "Субъектом инфинитива" может быть имя собственное (Mark), существительное (the boys) или личное местоимение в объектном падеже (me, you, them и т.п.). Например:

I would like	Lucy the girls her	to stay here.
--------------	--------------------------	---------------

◆ Однако, если "субъект инфинитива" совпадает с подлежащим, мы опускаем "субъект инфинитива".

Например: I would like to stay here.

("I" – одновременно и "субъект инфинитива" и подлежащее.)

### 4 Rephrase the following, as in the example.

- You must help me.  
I want *you to help me*.
- They mustn't leave now. ....  
I don't want .....
- She must eat her dinner.  
I want .....
- He must visit Aunt Linda.  
I want .....
- You mustn't talk to strangers.  
I don't want .....
- Fiona mustn't go on holiday by herself.  
I don't want .....
- They must do their homework now.  
I want .....
- You must go to bed now.  
I want .....

### 5 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the infinitive.

be - leave - do - make - meet - tell



1 I really don't know what ...to do...



2 You mustn't ..... anyone about this.



3 I can ..... my own clothes.



4 I want you ..... quiet.



5 I don't think the boss will let me ..... earlier today.



6 I'm pleased ..... you.

### 6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the infinitive.

Dear Emma,

I'm writing (1) *...to invite...* (invite) you to my birthday party next Saturday.

As you know, I'll be sixteen, so this is going to be a very special occasion for me. I've invited almost all of my friends and I really hope they'll all be able (2) ..... (come). Could I (3) ..... (ask) you (4) ..... (help) me with the preparations, though? I would like (5) ..... (decorate) the house with white and pink flowers, but I'm afraid I won't (6) ..... (have) time to do everything by myself. I've also decided (7) ..... (make) my own cake and I'll certainly need your help with that!

Please write back soon and let me (8) ..... (know) if you can make it.

Best wishes,  
Sandra



# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## Too/Enough



He is **too short** to reach the biscuits.



She's **tall enough** to reach the top shelf.

◆ **Too** употребляется **перед** прилагательными и наречиями. **Too** имеет негативный оттенок и показывает, что чего-то (какого-то качества) слишком много (больше, чем необходимо/требуется).

**too + прил./наречие + "to"-инфинитив**

Например: Sarah is **too young** to go to school.  
(Sarah is so young that she can't go to school.)  
He speaks **too quickly** for me to understand him.  
(He speaks so quickly that I can't understand him.)

◆ **Enough** употребляется **перед** существительными, но **после** прилагательных и наречий. **Enough** имеет позитивный оттенок и показывает, что нечто имеется в достаточном количестве, как раз столько, сколько нужно.

**прил./наречие + enough } + "to"-инфинитив**  
**enough + сущ.**

Например: She's **old enough** to go out on her own.  
(She can go out on her own.)  
I've got **enough butter** to make a cake.  
(I can make a cake.)

**enough ... + "to"-инфинитив** (позитивный оттенок)

Например: He is **strong enough** to lift the suitcase.

**not enough ... + "to"-инфинитив** (негативный оттенок)

Например: He is **not strong enough** to lift the suitcase.

**too ... + "to"-инфинитив** (негативный оттенок)

Например: He is **too weak** to lift the suitcase.

**too ... for somebody/something + "to"-инфинитив** (негативный оттенок)

Например: The suitcase is **too heavy** for him to lift.

### 7 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 It's only 6 o'clock. It's too	a enough to live alone.
2 He wasn't tall	b cold to go out without a coat.
3 I'm not old	c enough to go to bed now.
4 It's too	d enough to reach the cupboard.
5 The girl wasn't early	e expensive for me to buy.
6 The dress was too	f early to go to bed.
7 I'm not tired	g rich enough to buy a yacht.
8 We aren't	h enough to catch the train.

### 8 Complete the responses using too or enough.

- Can she win the race? (fast) Yes, *she's fast enough.*
- Can he buy this car? (cheap) No, .....
- Can he wear this jacket? (small) No, .....
- Can she carry the bags? (heavy) No, .....
- Can he hear the music? (loud) Yes, .....
- Can he touch the ceiling? (short) No, .....

### 9 Rewrite the sentences using too or enough.

- Don't wear a T-shirt. It's cold outside.  
It's *too cold outside to wear a T-shirt.*
- It's very hot today. Let's go to the beach.  
It's .....
- We're not going to the party yet. It's early.  
It's .....
- You can't touch the ceiling. You're short.  
You're not .....
- You can buy this sweater. It's cheap.  
This sweater is .....
- You can walk to school alone. You aren't too young.  
You're .....
- They can buy a luxury yacht. They're rich.  
They're .....
- You can lift this box. It's light.  
This box .....



## Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## "-ing"-форма



Mr Scott likes painting.  
Painting is his favourite hobby.

"-ing"-форма (-ing form) – это форма глагола, оканчивающаяся на -ing.

Например: Sam likes fishing.

## Мы употребляем "-ing"-форму:

- ◆ как существительное,  
Например: *Walking* is a good form of exercise.
- ◆ обычно после глаголов **like, love, dislike, hate, enjoy, prefer**,  
Например: Helen **likes watching** old films on TV.
- ◆ после глаголов **start, begin, stop, finish**,  
Например: He **started writing** his composition an hour ago.
- ◆ после предлогов,  
Например: I'm tired **of going** to work by bus every morning.
- ◆ после глагола **go**, когда говорим о спортивных занятиях, активном отдыхе и т.п. (activities),  
Например: We usually **go skiing** at the weekends.
- ◆ после выражений **be busy, it's no use, it's no good, it's (not) worth, what's the use of ...?, there's no point in**,  
Например: Father is **busy repairing** the car.
- ◆ после таких глаголов, как **avoid, admit, confess, deny, look forward to, mind, regret, risk, spend, suggest** и т.д.  
Например: Tony **avoided answering** my question.

## ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ

- 1 После глаголов **start, begin, continue, like, love, prefer** и **hate** можно употреблять как "-ing"-форму, так и "to"-инфинитив.  
Например: He **started writing/to write** his speech last night.
- 2 После выражений **would love / would like / would prefer** употребляется только "to"-инфинитив. Например: I **would love to have** my own house one day. (A не: ~~I would love having my own house one day.~~)
- 3 После глаголов **see, hear, feel** и **watch** можно употреблять как "-ing"-форму, так и инфинитив без to, однако смысл выражений будет несколько различным.
  - a) I saw Peter **cross** the street. (Я видел весь процесс – когда я уходил, он был уже на другой стороне улицы.)
  - b) I saw Peter **crossing** the street. (Я видел только часть процесса – не знаю, достиг ли он другой стороны улицы, поскольку я ушел раньше.)

## 10

Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

A	B
1 Writing letters to friends	a is very tiring.
2 The baby started	b is bad for your teeth.
3 Running long distances	c crying when I left the room.
4 Speaking foreign languages	d skiing last winter.
5 They went	e is one of my hobbies.
6 Eating lots of sugar	f washing the dishes.
7 Tom doesn't like	g is useful for everyone.

## 11

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

- 1 I would like ...*to go*... (go) out tonight.
- 2 He hates ..... (play) cards.
- 3 She is too excited ..... (sleep).
- 4 You must ..... (get up) early in the morning.
- 5 I regret ..... (spend) so much money last weekend.
- 6 They go ..... (run) every Tuesday evening.
- 7 I saw Helen ..... (wash) the dishes. It took her only ten minutes.
- 8 I started ..... (learn) French two years ago.
- 9 He was very pleased ..... (see) her again.
- 10 The dentist advised him ..... (stop) eating sweets.



# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

**12** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.



Last weekend, Toby's parents let him (1) ...go... (go) to the funfair with his friends. When they arrived, they didn't know which ride (2) ..... (try) first, but someone suggested (3) ..... (start) with the ghost train. Everyone agreed that this was a very good idea. After they had finished (4) ..... (ride) the ghost train, they moved on to the other rides. Toby admitted (5) ..... (be) afraid on the fast roller-coaster, but he was still happy enough (6) ..... (go) on it three times! He and his friends wanted (7) ..... (try) all of the rides but they were too exhausted (8) ..... (do) everything in one day. Toby suggested (9) ..... (come) back the following weekend. Then, they all decided (10) ..... (go) home. They all loved (11) ..... (visit) the funfair and they are looking forward to (12) ..... (return) this weekend.

**13** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

- A: Are you busy ...reading... (read)?  
 B: Yes, but I don't mind ..... (help) you. What do you want?  
 A: Do you know the answer to this question?  
 B: Yes. Look, I'll show you how ..... (do) it yourself.
- A: I've decided ..... (get) a part-time job.  
 B: Really? What kind of job do you want ..... (find)?  
 A: Well, I really enjoy ..... (look after) animals, so I wouldn't mind ..... (work) in a pet shop.
- A: The police caught the man who burgled my house last month.  
 B: Really? How did they manage..... (catch) him?  
 A: I don't know, but he admitted ..... (steal) things in our neighbourhood.  
 B: Well, I'm happy ..... (hear) that the thief was caught.

- A: Let's ..... (go) to the ice-rink at the weekend.  
 B: You know I hate ..... (ice-skate).  
 A: But you've only tried it once. Anyway, you love ..... (roller-skate). It's the same thing.  
 B: That's different.
- A: Dad, Lucy has started ..... (have) riding lessons. Will you let me ..... (go) riding too?  
 B: Do you really want ..... (go)?  
 A: Yes, I'd ..... (love) to.  
 B: Well, I'll talk to your mother and, if she agrees, I'm sure we can ..... (arrange) some lessons for you.  
 A: Thanks Dad.
- A: Did you know that Scott is going to ask Laura ..... (marry) him?  
 B: Really? How do you know that?  
 A: I saw them ..... (look) at engagement rings in a jewellery shop.  
 B: Oh, that's interesting.
- A: Are you looking forward to ..... (go) on holiday?  
 B: Yes, I'm busy ..... (plan) my week.  
 A: I suggest ..... (visit) the museums and art galleries. They're fascinating.  
 B: That's a good idea. Actually, I wanted ..... (ask) you what the town is like before I decide what ..... (do).

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- 1 Jerry was so short that he couldn't reach the top shelf.  
**too** Jerry was **too short to reach** the top shelf.
- 2 Fiona is too young to go out at night.  
**old** Fiona isn't **old enough to go** out at night.
- 3 Driving fast is dangerous.  
**drive** It is **dangerous to drive** fast.

**14** Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 Alec is too short to be a basketball player.  
**tall** Alec isn't ...**tall enough to be**... a basketball player.
- 2 Exercising regularly is good for you.  
**exercise** It is good ..... regularly.
- 3 Mary was so late that she didn't catch the bus.  
**too** Mary was ..... the bus.
- 4 This book is too boring for me to read.  
**enough** This book isn't ..... read.



# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## 15 Correct the mistakes.

- I'm not too tall to reach the top cupboard.
- He is enough fast to win the race.
- I'm old enough travelling alone.
- You must to get up now.
- She suggested to go to the cinema on Friday night.
- He promised sending me a postcard.
- It's no use to try to change her mind.
- She knocked before to open the door.
- He is tired enough to come to the party.
- I am poor enough to buy a new sports car.

## Revision Box

## 16 Choose the correct answer.

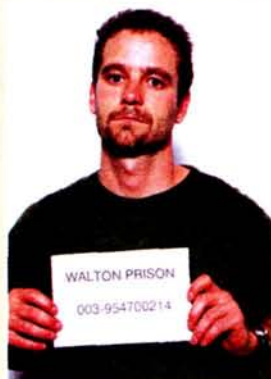
- I'm thirsty. I .....**C**..... for two hours.  
 A have run                      C have been running  
 B am running
- ..... Kate and Alice enjoy going to the theatre.  
 A Both            B Neither            C All
- This is the park ..... I take my dog every afternoon.  
 A where            B what            C which
- The children are tired. I think they ..... to bed early tonight.  
 A are going    B will go            C go
- Alice ..... to Japan four times so far.  
 A has gone    B has been going    C has been
- ..... his boss let him leave early?  
 A Shall            B Must            C Will
- Jack is in a hurry. He ..... his boss in twenty minutes and he has to be on time.  
 A will meet    B is meeting            C meets
- My husband painted our house all by .....  
 A himself    B him            C his
- The bus drivers were on strike yesterday, but Alex ..... get to work.  
 A was able to    B has been able to    C could
- Robert ..... lunch when his uncle phoned.  
 A was having    B has had            C had

## ORAL Activity

Jake Potts, a dangerous criminal, has escaped from prison. Look at the information in the poster below and make sentences, as in the example.

*e.g. Jake Potts managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning.*

### WANTED: JAKE POTTS



**HAVE YOU SEEN THIS MAN?**

**1 m 85  
85 kilos  
Brown hair  
Brown eyes**

- manage/escape/Walton Prison this morning
- make/people/trust him
- be clever enough/disguise himself
- enjoy/go/bars and cafés
- police/suggest/look out for him in these places
- police/continue/look for him
- police/advise/people/keep away from him and avoid/talk/him
- anyone who/see/him/should/contact the police on 2634197

## WRITING Activity

You hear a news bulletin on the radio about Jake Potts. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the bulletin below.

*This is the nine o'clock news. A dangerous criminal managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning. Jake Potts makes people .....*

.....







.....

.....

.....



## 1 Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using *who* or *which*.

	
1 Marconi/invent the radio	2 a washing-machine/ wash clothes
	
3 Bell/invent the telephone	4 zebras/have got stripes
	
5 a vacuum cleaner/ clean carpets	6 Jackie Kennedy/marry Aristotle Onassis

- 1 Marconi was the man who invented the radio.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 ...A... dog is this?  
A Whose      B Who      C Who's
- 2 That was the year ..... I bought my first car.  
A where      B when      C why
- 3 This is the restaurant ..... we ate last weekend.  
A where      B who      C when
- 4 That's the man ..... garden is always full of flowers.  
A who's      B whose      C who
- 5 That's the house ..... she lives.  
A when      B where      C who
- 6 The year ..... I was born my parents moved to the country.  
A why      B where      C when
- 7 There's no reason ..... he can't come with us.  
A where      B when      C why
- 8 Did she say ..... she was late?  
A why      B who      C whose

## 3 Fill in the gaps with the correct pronoun.

- 1 Rebecca has got a kitten. She found ...it... in the park.
- 2 Where are my keys? ..... can't find .....
- 3 This is Terry. This motorbike is .....
- 4 "Now listen, children. Behave ..... at the party."
- 5 The Smiths came to our house yesterday. .... brought ..... some flowers.
- 6 I've got a dog and Fiona has got one too, but my dog is older than .....
- 7 Mary decorated the cake .....
- 8 I left my dictionary at home. Can I use ..... please?

## 4 Rewrite the sentences using *both ... and* or *neither ... nor*.

- 1 Hilary likes skiing. Emily likes skiing, too.  
*Both Hilary and Emily like skiing.*
- 2 Samantha goes shopping on Saturdays. Eric goes shopping on Saturdays, too.  
.....
- 3 Brian doesn't play football. Simon doesn't play football, either.  
.....
- 4 Peter is a good dancer. Sally is a good dancer, too.  
.....
- 5 David doesn't know how to drive. Linda doesn't know how to drive, either.  
.....
- 6 Jane doesn't like carrots. I don't like carrots, either.  
.....

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 You ...B... buy any biscuits because we've got lots already.  
A could      B needn't      C can't
- 2 You ..... telephone your uncle tomorrow. He wants to speak to you.  
A must      B are able to      C can't
- 3 You ..... play ball games near the windows.  
A don't have to      B needn't      C can't
- 4 ..... I speak to you in my office, please?  
A Can't      B Must      C Could
- 5 He ..... speak two languages when he was ten years old.  
A needn't      B could      C may
- 6 Martha ..... leave hospital yesterday.  
A can't      B can      C was able to



**6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.**



Last weekend I went 1) *camping* (camp) with my brother. I expected 2) ..... (have) a terrible time, but, in fact, I didn't want 3) ..... (go) home at the end of the trip. We managed 4) ..... (put up) our tent by ourselves and we were very pleased 5) ..... (see) that it didn't fall down again! After we had finished 6) ..... (put up) the tent, we began 7) ..... (make) some sandwiches because we were very hungry after all that hard work! During the weekend we went 8) ..... (swim) in the river and we went 9) ..... (walk) in the countryside. We had a lovely time. 10) ..... (camp) is great!

**7 Fill in the gaps with *too* or *enough*.**

- 1 I'm not old *enough* to go to nightclubs.
- 2 I'm not lucky ..... to have my own bedroom. I share it with my sister.
- 3 My brother is ..... young to go to school. He's still a baby.
- 4 The bag is ..... heavy for me to carry.
- 5 The books are small ..... to put in this box.
- 6 It is ..... hot to wear a jacket today.

**8 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

- 1 Mary was so tired that she couldn't study any more. **too** Mary was *too tired to study* any more.
- 2 The boys are too young to play in the street. **old** The boys ..... play in the street.
- 3 This car is too expensive for him to buy. **not** This car is ..... to buy.
- 4 Jim was so shocked that he couldn't say anything. **too** Jim was ..... anything.

- 5 Alice is too short to be a model. **tall** Alice isn't ..... to be a model.
- 6 Meeting old friends is always nice. **to** It is ..... old friends.
- 7 Helen was so excited that she couldn't sleep. **too** Helen ..... sleep.

**9 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

- 1 A: I *met* (meet) Simon Jones last week.  
B: Really. I ..... (not/see) him for a long time.
- 2 A: ..... (you/do) anything this evening?  
B: No, I ..... (stay) at home this evening because I ..... (be) tired.
- 3 A: ..... (Steve/phone) you yesterday?  
B: No, he ..... (not/phone) me. I ..... (probably/give) him a call later this evening.
- 4 A: ..... (be) you busy?  
B: Yes, I ..... (be).  
A: What ..... (you/do)?  
B: I ..... (study) for an exam at the moment.
- 5 A: Why are your eyes red?  
B: Because I ..... (work) on the computer for three hours.
- 6 A: ..... (you/ever/go) to France?  
B: Yes, I ..... (go) there on holiday last year.  
A: I ..... (never/go) there, but I want to go next year.
- 7 A: How long ..... (you/live) in Russia?  
B: I ..... (live) here since I was born.
- 8 A: ..... (you/post) the party invitations yet?  
B: Yes, I ..... (do) it this morning.
- 9 A: Why are you crying?  
B: Because I ..... (just/cut) my finger.
- 10 A: We ..... (go) to a restaurant last night.  
B: ..... (be) the food good?  
A: Yes, I ..... (enjoy) it very much.

**10 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 He is the man who's daughter won the competition.
- 2 I want he to help me in the garden.
- 3 Did you hear him to shout?
- 4 We went to the bakery for to buy some bread.
- 5 Would you like me do the washing-up?
- 6 When have you met her?
- 7 He is tired because he has painted the gate since this morning.
- 8 It's not worth to wait any more.



### Прошедшее совершенное время

Прошедшее совершенное время - Прошедшее совершенное продолженное время



What **had** Lesley **done** before her husband came home?  
She **had** **cooked** dinner, but she **hadn't** **laid** the table.

Прошедшее совершенное время (past perfect simple, или просто past perfect) образуется с помощью **had** и **причастия прошедшего времени** смыслового глагола.

В вопросах **had** ставится перед подлежащим.

В отрицаниях **not** ставится после **had**.

Утверждение			
Полная форма		Краткая форма	
I	<b>had</b>	'd	} finished/ left.
He/She/It You/We/They			
Вопрос			
<b>Had</b>	I he/she/it you/we/they		} finished/ left?
Отрицание			
Полная форма		Краткая форма	
I	<b>had not</b>	<b>hadn't</b>	} finished/ left.
He/She/It You/We/They			

### 1 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past perfect simple.

- Jason ...**had returned**... (return) home before the storm broke out.
- ..... (Lucy/pack) her suitcase by the time you called her?
- The children ..... (finish) doing their homework by nine o'clock.
- ..... (Julie/type) the letters by the time her boss came to the office?
- I ..... (not /finish) my lunch when uncle Bill came.
- After Sarah ..... (do) the shopping, she had coffee with her friends at a café.
- When I got to the garage, the mechanic ..... (not/repair) my car.
- The boys were frightened because they ..... (not/be) on a plane before.

### 2 It was Marie's birthday yesterday and she gave a party for her friends. What had she done before the day of the party? Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.

SA: What had Marie done before the day of the party?  
SB: She had prepared the food.

1 prepare/the food

2 put up/the decorations

3 bake/a cake

4 clean/the house

5 send/the invitations

6 borrow/some CDs



# Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

## Употребление

Past perfect simple употребляется:

- ♦ для того, чтобы показать, что одно действие произошло раньше другого в прошлом. При этом то действие, которое произошло раньше, выражается **past perfect simple**, а случившееся позже – **past simple**,



*They had done their homework before they went out to play yesterday afternoon. (=They did their homework first and then they went out to play.)*

- ♦ для выражения действий, которые произошли до указанного момента в прошлом,

*She had watered all the flowers by five o'clock in the afternoon. (=She had finished watering the flowers before five o'clock.)*



- ♦ как эквивалент present perfect simple в прошлом. То есть, **past perfect simple** употребляется для выражения действия, которое началось и закончилось **в прошлом**, а **present perfect simple** – для действия, которое началось **в прошлом** и продолжается (или только что закончилось) **в настоящем**.

*Например: Jill wasn't at home. She had gone out. (Тогда ее не было дома.)  
Jill isn't at home. She has gone out. (Сейчас ее нет дома.)*

## Маркеры

К маркерам past perfect simple относятся: **before, after, already, just, till/until, when, by, by the time** и т.д.

- 3 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences. Which is the first action in each pair?**

### Column A

- 1 By the time he reached the airport *c (first action: the plane had already taken off)*
- 2 Mary was angry because
- 3 The bank robbers had escaped
- 4 We went to the theatre
- 5 The actress gave an interview

### Column B

- a her husband had forgotten her birthday.
- b after we had bought the tickets.
- c the plane had already taken off.
- d after she had won the prize.
- e before the police arrived.

- 4 Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.**

e.g. a) *After/When Sue had packed her suitcase, she called a taxi.*  
b) *Sue had packed her suitcase before she called a taxi.*

First	Then
• Sue/pack/her suitcase	call/a taxi
• Bob/eat/the meal	pay/the bill
• Mary/read/the contract	sign/it
• the boys/watch/the match	turn off/the TV
• Peter/borrow/some money	buy/a car

- 5 Join the sentences using the words in brackets.**

- 1 She cleaned the house. Then, she watched TV. (after)  
*After she had cleaned the house, she watched TV.*
- 2 I found a solution to my problem. Then, I felt happier. (when) .....
- 3 The boys finished their homework. Then, they went out to play. (before)  
.....
- 4 He locked the door. Then, the phone rang. (after)  
.....
- 5 Sarah washed the dishes. Then, her husband arrived. (by the time) .....
- 6 The concert finished. Then, the fans left the stadium. (when) .....
- 7 The play started. Then, Henry arrived at the theatre. (already...when) .....



Краткие ответы

Пример: Had you read the book before you saw the film? Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.

Had you ...?	Yes, I/we had.
	No, I/we hadn't.
Had he/she/it ...?	Yes, he/she/it had.
	No, he/she/it hadn't.
Had they ...?	Yes, they had.
	No, they hadn't.

6 Rick and Alison went on holiday last weekend. Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: Had they bought tickets before they left?  
SB: Yes, they had.



- buy / tickets ✓
- lock / house ✓
- leave / car at the garage X
- book / hotel room X
- set / burglar alarm ✓
- feed / the cat ✓
- phone / neighbours X

Past Perfect Simple – Past Continuous – Past Simple

Past Perfect Simple

- Употребляется для выражения действия, которое произошло раньше другого действия в прошлом.

Past Continuous

- Употребляется для выражения действия, продолжавшегося в прошлом в момент, когда произошло другое действие.

Past Simple

- Употребляется для выражения действий, произошедших непосредственно одно за другим в прошлом.



They **had eaten** dinner when their friends came. (Сначала они поужинали, а потом пришли друзья.)



They **were eating** dinner when their friends came. (Они все еще ужинали, когда пришли друзья.)



They **ate** dinner when their friends came. (Они сели ужинать, как только пришли друзья.)

7 Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple, past perfect simple or past continuous.

- 1 A: Where 1) ...were... (be) you last night?  
B: I 2) ..... (be) at the cinema. I 3) ..... (watch) a great film when a fire 4) ..... (break out).  
A: Oh gosh! How 5) ..... (it/happen)?  
B: Someone 6) ..... (drop) a match into a waste-paper basket.
- 2 A: 1) ..... (you/go) to the beach on Saturday?  
B: No, I 2) ..... (go) on Sunday instead.  
A: 3) ..... (you/have) a good time?
- B: No, I didn't. I 4) ..... (sunbathe) when it 5) ..... (start) raining, so I 6) ..... (leave) in a hurry.
- 3 A: I 1) ..... (lose) my keys yesterday.  
B: Where 2) ..... (you/lose) them?  
A: I don't know. I 3) ..... (go) shopping and when I got back, I 4) ..... (realise) that I 5) ..... (leave) my keys somewhere.



## Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

## Прошедшее совершенное продолженное время



*He had been working on the computer for an hour before she came to help him.*

Прошедшее совершенное продолженное время (past perfect continuous)\* образуется с помощью **had been** и смыслового глагола в “-ing”-форме. Вопросы строятся путем постановки **had** перед подлежащим. Например: *Had Peter been driving for two hours before he had the accident?*

Отрицания строятся путем постановки **not** после **had**. Например: *He had not/hadn't been driving for two hours before he had the accident.*

\* Употребляется также термин past perfect progressive.

## Утверждение

	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	had	'd	} been studying.
He/She/It You/We/They			

## Вопрос

	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
Had	I he/she/it you/we/they	'd	} been studying?

## Отрицание

	Полная форма	Краткая форма	
I	had not	hadn't	} been studying.
He/She/It You/We/They			

## Краткие ответы

Краткие ответы в past perfect continuous строятся так же, как и в past perfect simple (см. стр. 76).

Например: *Had you been sleeping for long when I called you last night? Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.*

## Употребление

◆ Past perfect continuous употребляется как эквивалент present perfect continuous в прошлом. То есть, **past perfect continuous** подчеркивает длительность действия, которое началось и закончилось в прошлом, в то время как **present perfect continuous** подчеркивает длительность действия, которое началось в прошлом и продолжается (или только что закончилось) **в настоящем**.

Например: *He had been waiting for the bus for half an hour before it came.* (Сейчас он уже не ждет автобуса.) *He has been waiting for the bus for half an hour.* (Он все еще ждет автобуса.)

◆ Past perfect continuous употребляется для того, чтобы показать, что результат продолжавшегося в прошлом действия был замечен (очевиден) в течение некоторого времени **в прошлом**. А present perfect continuous – для того, чтобы показать, что результат начавшегося в прошлом действия замечен (очевиден) **в настоящем**.

Например: *She was tired. She had been working hard all day yesterday.* (Мы могли видеть, что она устала. Результат был замечен в прошлом.) *She is tired. She has been working hard all day.* (Мы можем видеть, что она устала. Результат замечен и сейчас.)

## Маркеры

К маркерам past perfect continuous относятся: *for, since, how long, before, until* и т.п.

8

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past perfect continuous.

- Sophie ...*had been painting*... (paint) the walls all day before she finished them.
- ..... (you/wait) long when the boss announced that he couldn't see you?
- Tom ..... (look) for a job for six months when he found one.
- We ..... (watch) TV for half an hour when the doorbell rang.
- They ..... (sunbathe) for an hour when it started to rain.
- Stan ..... (work) as a postman for forty years when he retired.
- I ..... (live) in France for ten years when I met my husband.



Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

**9** Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the past perfect continuous.

play, work, walk, wait, discuss, sit



1 She was wet. She ...*had been walking*... in the rain.



2 They were happy. They ..... together for hours.



3 He was irritated. He ..... for the bus for half an hour.



4 He was hot. He ..... in the barn.



5 She was suntanned. She ..... in the sun for hours.



6 They were tired. They ..... business problems for four hours.

**10** Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous.

- 1 A: Are you alright? You look tired.  
 B: Yes, I am. I didn't sleep very well. I 1) *...had just gone...* (just/go) to sleep last night when a lot of noise outside woke me up. I got up and went to the window. I 2) ..... (stand) there for a few minutes when two police cars stopped outside my house. I went downstairs and a policeman told me that two prisoners 3) ..... (escape) from prison and were hiding in the area.  
 A: Did they catch them again?  
 B: Yes, but I didn't sleep very well after that.  
 2 A: Did you do anything exciting at the weekend?  
 B: Not really. By the time I 1) ..... (do)

my shopping and cleaned the house, Saturday was nearly over. What about you?

- A: Well, I 2) ..... (plan) to go out with my friend but she was late and I 3) ..... (wait) for nearly two hours before she phoned me to say she couldn't come after all.  
 B: That's a shame. Next weekend, we should go somewhere nice together.

**11** Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past simple.

- A Bert and Willy 1) *...went...* (go) fishing on Sunday. They 2) ..... (take) some sandwiches and some coffee with them. They 3) ..... (sit) on the river bank all day, but by the time they 4) ..... (leave), they 5) ..... (not/catch) anything.  
 B James 1) ..... (be) late for work this morning. He 2) ..... (forget) to set his alarm clock and then, when he 3) ..... (get) to work, his boss 4) ..... (be) very angry.  
 C Barry 1) ..... (have) lots of work to do yesterday. He 2) ..... (get up) very early and by six o'clock, he 3) ..... (finish). Then, he 4) ..... (have) time to relax.  
 D Yesterday, Liz 1) ..... (go) to a party. She 2) ..... (have) a great time, but when she 3) ..... (get) home, she 4) ..... (realise) she 5) ..... (forget) her jacket. So, she 6) ..... (go) back to the party to get it.

**12** Put the verbs in brackets into the past perfect simple or the past perfect continuous.

Yesterday was a bad day for Andrew. He 1) *...hadn't slept...* (not/sleep) well because there was a terrible storm in the night. After he 2) ..... (have) a shower, he made breakfast. After he 3) ..... (eat), he got into his car and drove to work. He 4) ..... (only/drive) for five minutes when he remembered that he 5) ..... (leave) his briefcase at home. He turned the car around and went home again. Then, he realised that he 6) ..... (lock) himself out. The keys were still inside the house! Andrew was already late for work, so he decided to leave the briefcase and go to work. When he arrived, his secretary told him that his boss 7) ..... (try) to call him at home. Andrew went to find his boss. When he asked his boss why he 8) ..... (call), he told him that it hadn't been necessary for him to come to work that day after all! Poor Andrew drove all the way home again.



# Revision Box

## 13 Cross out the unnecessary word.

- The woman who she lives next door is a flight attendant.
- Sam is going to on holiday next month.
- Karen had been finished her homework by the time her parents came home.
- Peter couldn't to dive when he was young.
- Mary did used to like sweets, but now she doesn't.
- Neither Liz nor Kim is not tall.
- The box was too heavy for Paul to lift it.
- That blouse isn't yours. It's mine blouse.
- He is not never late for work.
- Jack is not too short to reach the ceiling.

## 14 Choose the correct answer.

- That's the girl ...**B**... dog bit me last week.  
A who      B whose      C that
- I ..... the house all day, I need a break!  
A am tidying    B have been tidying    C tidy
- Charles and Monica are ..... doctors.  
A both      B all      C none
- You ..... finish your homework before you go out to play.  
A mustn't      B must      C can't
- Archie went ..... his uncle.  
A phone      B to phone      C phoning
- My father lets me ..... up late on Saturday nights.  
A stay      B to stay      C staying
- Marion denied ..... the window.  
A to break      B break      C breaking
- I ..... your mother three times this week.  
A have seen    B see      C have been seeing
- Roger ..... a luxury yacht.  
A has recently bought    B buys    C was buying
- I ..... fairy tales when I was a child.  
A was reading    B used to read    C have read

## ORAL Activity

Linda is married to Nick and they have a baby. Last weekend, Linda had to go away on business, so Nick was at home. Linda asked him to do some things. Look at the list and say what Nick had or hadn't done by the time Linda returned home.

e.g. Nick had fed the baby.

feed the baby

cook something

do the shopping

make the beds

take the rubbish out

put the baby's toys away

pay the phone bill



## WRITING Activity

Linda is writing a letter to her friend Lucy. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete Linda's letter.

Dear Lucy,

Hi! I hope you're well. I'm writing to tell you what a busy weekend I had. As you know, I had to go away on business, so Nick was at home with the baby. As usual, he had done only half the things I had asked him to. He had fed the baby but he hadn't .....

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

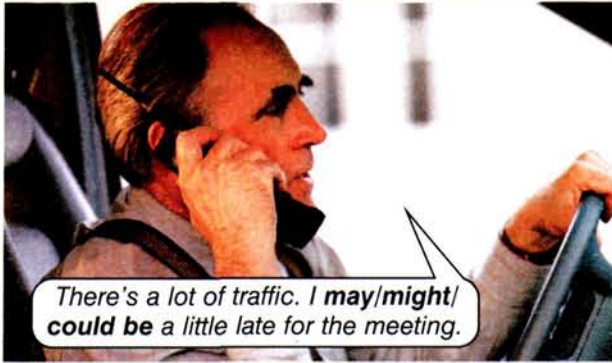
When I asked him why he hadn't done all the things, he told me he had just been lazy! I was so angry with him!

Anyway, I've got to go now because I have a million things to do and I haven't got time to be lazy.

Best wishes,  
Linda



### May – Might – Could (возможность – просьба)



- ◆ Мы употребляем **may / might / could** для выражения возможности (possibility).  
Например: 'Where's Paul?' 'He **may/might/could be** at the cinema.' (Возможно / может быть, он в кино.)
- ◆ Мы употребляем **May I...? / Could I...? / Can I...?**, чтобы попросить разрешения / позволения (ask for permission) у кого-то. Обратите внимание на различия в употреблении.  
**May I use your telephone?** (Официально – мы недостаточно хорошо знаем человека.)  
**Can I use your phone?** (Неофициально – мы хорошо знаем человека.)  
**Could I use your phone?** (Более вежливо, чем "can".)
- ◆ Когда просят разрешения у нас, мы можем ответить: **Yes, of course. / Of course. / Certainly.** Если хорошо знаем человека, мы можем ответить так: **Sure. или No problem.**

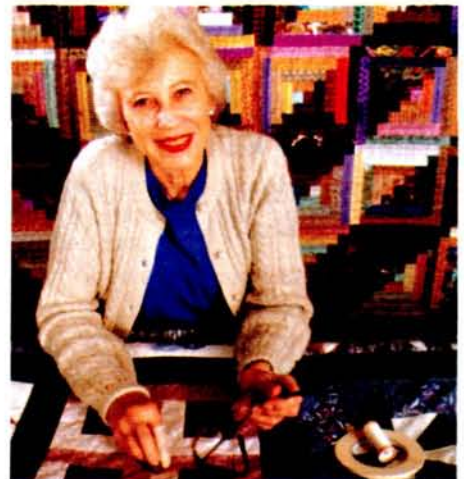
**maybe** (наречие) = perhaps  
Например: Jack isn't here. **Maybe** he's at home.  
**may be** (модальный глагол + инфинитив без to)  
Например: Sheila **may be** in the office.

### 1 Fill in the gaps with **may** or **may not** (возможно, не ...) and one of the verbs from the list.

leave, buy, come, be, enjoy, cut, go, visit, cook

- 1 I ...**may not go**... to school tomorrow. I don't feel very well.
- 2 Father ..... the grass today. It looks as if it is going to rain.
- 3 Dan isn't at home. He ..... at the football field.
- 4 I ..... a new dress. I haven't really got enough money.
- 5 We ..... the Smiths. There is a film on TV we want to watch.
- 6 Let's take Molly to the funfair. She ..... it.
- 7 Mother ..... something special tonight. It's my birthday.
- 8 I ..... work early today. I have almost finished everything I have to do.
- 9 Sally ..... home late tonight. She's got a lot of work at the office.

### 2 Underline the correct answer.



- A: Good morning, madam. 1) **May/Must** I help you?  
B: You 2) **might/mustn't** be able to. I need a ball of wool that is the same colour as my jumper.  
A: Just a moment, please. I 3) **must/mustn't** look in the stock room. We 4) **might/might not** have some left. I'm not sure.  
B: The wool 5) **must/mustn't** be exactly the same colour, it 6) **must/mustn't** be different.  
A: 7) **Could/Mustn't** I ask you a question, madam?  
B: Yes.  
A: What do you want the wool for?  
B: I 8) **could/must** finish knitting this jumper. It only has one sleeve at the moment!



Should – Ought to (совет)

Shall – Will

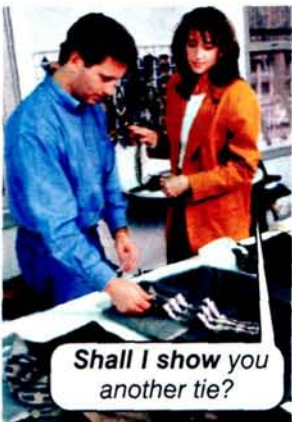
(предложение – просьба)



◆ Мы употребляем **should / ought to**, когда даем совет.

Например: Young children **should/ought to go to bed early.**

You **should not/shouldn't** } spend so much  
**ought not to/oughtn't to** } money on clothes.



◆ Мы употребляем **shall** в вопросах:

- а) когда предлагаем сделать что-либо для кого-то (offer), Например: **Shall I carry your shopping for you?** (Поднести Ваши покупки?),
- б) когда предлагаем сделать что-либо вместе (make suggestions), Например: **Shall we visit your cousins tonight?**
- в) когда просим дать нам указания, предложения (ask for suggestions), Например: **'What time shall I call you?'** 'Give me a call at six.'

◆ Мы употребляем **will** в вопросах, когда хотим о чем-то попросить (make request).

Например: **Will you phone the doctor, please?**

3

Joan doesn't always do the right thing. What does her mother advise her to do? Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. You **should** do your homework.

- She doesn't do her homework.
- She talks all the time.
- She never washes the dishes.
- She doesn't tidy her room.
- She eats lots of chocolate.
- She argues with her sisters.
- She doesn't put her clothes away.
- She never takes the dog for a walk.

4

Fill in the gaps with the question words from the list and **shall we**.

when, what, how, how much, who, where

- 1 'Where **shall we** go on Saturday night?'  
'Let's go to a restaurant.'
- 2 '..... spend on a present for Jane?'  
'£10.'
- 3 '..... pay?' 'In cash.'
- 4 '..... invite to the party?' 'Just our friends.'
- 5 '..... decorate the house?' 'This weekend.'
- 6 '..... do on your birthday?'  
'We can have a party.'
- 7 '..... do on Monday?'  
'Why don't we go swimming?'
- 8 '..... take the dog for a walk?'  
'Let's take him to the beach.'

5

Mrs Patterson asks the nanny to do some things while she's gone. Use the prompts to make requests, as in the example.

e.g. Will you give the baby a bath?

	• give the baby a bath		• take the rubbish out
	• feed the baby		• water the plants
	• put all the toys away		• iron the clothes



ФУНКЦИИ МОДАЛЬНЫХ ГЛАГОЛОВ

FUNCTION	MODAL VERBS
obligation/necessity	You <b>must/have to</b> study hard. (You're obliged to ...)
advice	You <b>must/should/ought to</b> see a doctor. (I advise you to ...)
prohibition	You <b>mustn't</b> talk in the library. (You aren't allowed to...)
lack of necessity	They <b>needn't/don't have to</b> call us tonight. (It isn't necessary.)
ability	Tony <b>can</b> run fast. (present) When he was young, he <b>could</b> climb trees. (general ability in the past) She <b>was able to</b> get into the house. (single action in the past)
permission	<b>Can/Could/May</b> I use your phone? (asking for permission) You <b>can</b> take my car tonight. (giving permission) You <b>can't</b> take photographs inside the museum. (refusing permission)
request	<b>Can</b> you lend me your pen, please? <b>Could</b> you open the door, please? <b>Will</b> you post this letter?
suggestion	We <b>can/could</b> watch a film tonight. <b>Shall</b> we eat out tonight? (Why don't we eat/How about eating out tonight?)
possibility	He <b>may/might/could</b> be ill. (Perhaps; it is possible.)
offer	<b>Shall</b> I carry the shopping for you? (Would you like me to carry ...?)
logical assumption	She <b>must be</b> at work. (I'm sure she is ...) She <b>can't be</b> at work. (I'm sure she isn't ...)

6

Rewrite the sentences using modal verbs, as in the example.

- It isn't necessary for her to wear a suit to the office.  
*She needn't/doesn't have to wear a suit to the office.*
- You aren't allowed to take those books out of the library.  
.....
- It is possible that Mark will be at home this evening.  
.....
- Would you like me to make some sandwiches for you?  
.....
- I advise you to leave early.  
.....
- Emily managed to find a job after looking for six months.  
.....
- I'm sure Paul isn't from Canada.  
.....
- We are obliged to take exams every six months.  
.....
- I'm sure the children aren't happy with your decision.  
.....
- Perhaps we will go to Florida on holiday.  
.....

7

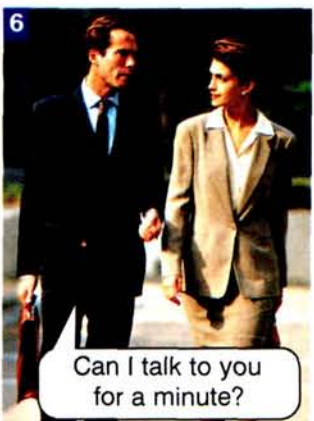
Choose the correct answer.

- I ... **C** ... remember to go to the bank. I haven't got any money.  
A don't have to    B needn't    C must
- ..... I take your order, please?  
A Mustn't    B Must    C May
- ..... you ride a bicycle?  
A Can    B Should    C May
- Steven ..... read and write until he was seven years old.  
A must    B could    C couldn't
- ..... you make dinner tonight?  
A Shall    B Will    C May
- Susan, ..... you come outside and play with me?  
A will    B shall    C may
- You ..... go to bed late during the week.  
A couldn't    B shall    C shouldn't
- You ..... visit your grandparents more often.  
A ought to    B were able to    C shall
- ..... we go to the cinema at the weekend?  
A Mustn't    B May    C Shall
- 'Where ..... we meet?' 'At my place.'  
A must    B shall    C ought to



- 11 Peter ..... go to the dentist before his toothache gets worse.  
A ought to      B shall      C can
- 12 You ..... do the ironing. I'll do it instead.  
A needn't      B must      C mustn't
- 13 You ..... cross the road without looking first. It's dangerous.  
A needn't      B mustn't      C must

**8** Read what each person says and rewrite their comments using another modal verb.



- 1 Will you read louder, please?  
2 .....  
3 .....

- 4 .....  
5 .....  
6 .....

**9** Match the sentences in Column A with the responses in Column B.

Column A

- Do I have to do the shopping today?
- Can I ask you a question?
- Will you buy me some stamps at the post office?
- If you're tired, we could have a short break.
- May I borrow your mobile phone, please?
- Edward can't be in his office.

Column B

- Certainly.
- Yes, that would be nice.
- No, you don't. I did it yesterday.
- Yes, I agree. He must be at the bank.
- Sure. How many do you want?
- Of course. What do you want to know?

- 1 ...c... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 .....

**10** Underline the correct item.

Dear Henry,

I'm writing to you because I need some advice.

1) Can/Shall you help me, please? My boss offered me a job in Italy and I 2) could/must make a decision about it soon. I've been thinking about it since last week but I 3) haven't been able to/wasn't able to decide! I'm a bit worried that I 4) shall/may not enjoy living in another country. I 5) might/ought to find it difficult to learn Italian. However, I 6) won't have to/mustn't stay there if I don't like it. What do you think? 7) Should/Will I move to Italy or 8) could/should I stay here? 9) Could/May you write to me and tell me what you think?

I hope to hear from you soon.

Best wishes,  
Ronnie



**11** Fill in the gaps with an appropriate modal verb. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

- 1 A: I ...*could*... roller-skate when I was young.  
B: So could I. Those were the days.
- 2 A: Dad's car broke down yesterday.  
B: ..... he ..... repair it?  
A: No, he took it to the garage.
- 3 A: Those men look alike. They .....  
be brothers.  
B: Yes, they are.
- 4 A: You ..... leave your toys on the floor.  
B: Why?  
A: You'll cause an accident.
- 5 A: Shall I do Grandma's shopping for her?  
B: No, you..... . She wants to do it herself.
- 6 A: You ..... tidy your bedroom today.  
B: Oh, do I ..... ?
- 7 A: Where is Colin?  
B: I'm not sure. He ..... be in his office.
- 8 A: What ..... we do at the weekend?  
B: We ..... go swimming.
- 9 A: My brother ..... ride a motorbike.  
B: Really? ..... he drive a car, too?
- 10 A: I'm really tired.  
B: You ..... go to bed early tonight.
- 11 A: ..... I help you, sir?  
B: No thank you. I'm just looking around.

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

Внимательно посмотрите на эти группы предложений. В каждой группе предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- 1 I advise you to look for another job.  
**should** You **should look for** another job.  
**ought** You **ought to look for** another job.
- 2 Perhaps Mary is at the library.  
**may** Mary **may be at the** library.
- 3 Let's leave the party now.  
**shall** **Shall we leave** the party now?
- 4 I'm sure Jack isn't married.  
**can't** Jack **can't be** married.
- 5 I'm sure Peter has a lot of money.  
**must** Peter **must have a lot of** money.

**12** Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- 1 Perhaps Nick is at the office.  
**may** Nick ...*may be at the*... office.
- 2 I don't think Mary is very happy at the moment.  
**can't** Mary ..... very happy at the moment.

- 3 I'm bored. Let's watch TV.  
**shall** I'm bored. .... TV?
- 4 I'm sure those are Paula's sunglasses.  
**must** Those ..... Paula's sunglasses.
- 5 I advise you to stop eating fatty foods.  
**ought** You ..... fatty foods.
- 6 Perhaps the children are in the playground.  
**may** The children ..... playground.
- 7 I'm sure they come from Spain. They've got a Spanish accent.  
**must** They .....  
They've got a Spanish accent.

**13** Read the situations and complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

- 1 You are at school. Your teacher tells you to bring your homework with you tomorrow.  
*You must* bring your homework with you tomorrow.
- 2 You have fallen over. Your arm hurts. Your friend thinks it might be broken. She advises you to go to hospital.  
..... go to hospital.
- 3 Your friend is having a birthday party on Saturday. You want to go. Ask your parents for permission.  
..... go to my friend's party on Saturday?
- 4 You are eating lunch with your family. You can't reach the salt. Make a request.  
..... pass the salt, please?
- 5 Your mother asks you where your brother is. You think he is at the cinema with his friends.  
..... be at the cinema with his friends.
- 6 Your parents are planning to go on holiday this summer. They can't decide where to go. You suggest going to America.  
..... go to America.
- 7 You are at the beach with your mother. She is going to buy a drink. She asks you if you want anything. Ask for an ice-cream.  
..... buy me an ice-cream, please?

**14** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Might we visit Mary and Tony tonight?
- 2 I'm not sure where Ed is. He *mustn't* be at work.
- 3 Will I help you wash the dishes?
- 4 You *mustn't* get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
- 5 Martha had a bad cold but she *could* do all her work at the office.
- 6 You *shouldn't* go to the dentist if you have toothache.
- 7 Shall I borrow your pen, please?
- 8 I *might* climb trees when I was young.



# Revision Box

**15** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.

A I went (1) ...*swimming*... (swim) last week. Even though it is only April, it was warm enough (2) ..... (swim). I hope (3) ..... (go) again next week if the weather is good.

B I also managed (1) ..... (find) time to go to the cinema to see the new Brad Pitt film last week. The film is worth (2) ..... (see) because it is very exciting.

**16** Choose the correct answer.

Dear Melanie,  
Hi! I'm writing 1) ...*B*... you some good news. My father 2) ..... for a new job for two months 3) ..... he found one last week. It is in Carrfield and that means that we 4) ..... move back. I'm very happy about this because I 5) ..... see my old friends again. I was very sad 6) ..... we left two years ago, but now I'm looking forward 7) ..... back.  
Well, I must go now. I hope 8) ..... you very soon.

Best wishes,  
Jenny

- |                       |                   |                    |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1 A give              | B to give         | C giving           |
| 2 A had looked        | B was looking     | C had been looking |
| 3 A until             | B after           | C while            |
| 4 A should            | B have to         | C shall            |
| 5 A have been able to | B will be able to | C was able to      |
| 6 A when              | B while           | C as soon as       |
| 7 A come              | B to coming       | C to come          |
| 8 A see               | B seeing          | C to see           |

## ORAL Activity

A fire-fighter is visiting your school. He wants to tell the students what they should/shouldn't do if there is a fire. Look at the prompts below and say what his advice is.

e.g. *You should leave the classroom at once.*

- leave the classroom at once
- stay behind to collect your things
- follow your teacher's instructions
- use the lift
- run down the stairs
- go to a safe place
- panic



## WRITING Activity

Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the leaflet that the fire-fighter gave the students, as in the example.

### What to do in case of fire

*You should leave the classroom at once.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

### What not to do in case of fire

.....

.....

.....

.....





The Parthenon **was built** in the 5th century BC. It **is visited** by thousands of tourists every year.

Страдательный залог образуется с помощью глагола **to be** и причастия прошедшего времени (past participle) смыслового глагола.

**to be + past participle (pp)**

◆ **Временные формы страдательного залога:**

**present simple:** am/is/are + pp  
The office **is cleaned** twice a week.

**present continuous:** am/is/are being + pp  
The office **is being cleaned** now.

**past simple:** was/were + pp  
The office **was cleaned** last week.

**past continuous:** was/were being + pp  
The office **was being cleaned** when the boss arrived.

**present perfect simple:** have/has been + pp  
The office **has not been cleaned** yet.

**past perfect simple:** had been + pp  
The office **had been cleaned** by two o'clock.

**future simple:** will be + pp  
The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.

◆ **В вопросах to be ставится перед подлежащим.** Например: *Is your car being serviced?*

**Отрицания образуются с помощью not.**  
Например: *The furniture has not been delivered yet.*

◆ **Инфинитив в форме страдательного залога:**

**to be + past participle**

Например: He wants **to be told** the truth.

◆ **Модальные глаголы в страдательном залоге:**

**modal verb + be + past participle**

Например: The roof of the house **must be repaired**.

**1** Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using the **present simple passive**, as in the example.

✓ 1 Volkswagen cars are made in Germany.

1 Volkswagen cars/ make/Germany	2 a lot of rice/ eat/India	3 snails/eat/ France
4 Coca Cola/ produce/the USA	5 coffee/grow/ Brazil	6 beer/produce/ Germany

**2** Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences using the **past simple passive**. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

✓ e.g. SA: *Who was "Oliver Twist" written by?*  
SB: *It was written by Charles Dickens.*

Column A	Column B
1 'Oliver Twist' (write)	a Leonardo da Vinci
2 The 'Mona Lisa' (paint)	b Steven Spielberg
3 The Eiffel Tower (build)	c Alexander the Great
4 'Jurassic Park' (direct)	d Charles Dickens
5 'Carmen' (compose)	e Georges Bizet
6 Alexandria (found)	f Gustave Eiffel
7 America (discover)	g Christopher Columbus
8 The telephone (invent)	h Alexander Graham Bell

**3** Mrs Edison is a businesswoman. She was away on a business trip but now she is back. She wants to know what has been done while she was away. Use the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Have they delivered my new desk?*  
SB: *No, it hasn't been delivered yet.*  
SA: *Have you posted the invitations?*  
SB: *Yes, they have already been posted.*

- 1 they / deliver / my new desk? (No)
- 2 you / post / the invitations? (Yes)
- 3 they / repair / the photocopier? (Yes)
- 4 you / type / last month's reports? (No)
- 5 you / place / advertisement in the newspaper? (No)
- 6 you / pay / the bills? (Yes)



4

Emma Doyle has got three children. Yesterday she had to go out. What had been done by the children by the time she got home? Look at the prompts and make sentences using the past perfect passive, as in the example.

e.g. *The beds had been made.*  
*The dishes had not been washed.*

a	beds / make	✓	e	cat / feed	x
b	dishes / wash	x	f	dinner / cook	x
c	plants / water	✓	g	rubbish / take out	✓
d	carpet / Hoover	✓	h	windows / clean	x

5

Fill in the gaps with the correct passive tense of the verbs in brackets.

- A: These flowers are great.  
B: They ...*were sent*... (send) to me yesterday by one of my fans.
- A: Have you ever appeared on TV?  
B: Actually, I ..... (recently/ask) to take part in a show.
- A: When will I have my car?  
B: It ..... (deliver) to your house the day after tomorrow.
- A: So, when did they tell you about the robbery?  
B: I ..... (inform) by the police as soon as they found out.
- A: Why can't we go over the bridge?  
B: Because it ..... (repair) at the moment.
- A: I'm tired.  
B: So am I. But these reports must ..... (type) before we leave.
- A: Who looks after your baby when you're at work?  
B: Well, he ..... (look after) by my mother.
- A: Those pictures are beautiful.  
B: They ..... (paint) by my father while he was on holiday last summer.
- A: Who does the washing-up in your house?  
B: The dishes ..... (wash) by my brother and then they ..... (dry) by my sister.
- A: Why can't I use your car?  
B: Because it ..... (service) at the moment. You can take Mum's car if you want.
- A: Did you post the letters?  
B: No, they ..... (already/post) by the time I came in.
- A: What will happen to the criminals?  
B: They ..... (punish) for their crimes.
- A: That's a very pretty tablecloth.  
B: It ..... (give) to me last year for my birthday.
- A: Have you moved house yet?  
B: Yes. The last boxes ..... (just/move).
- A: Have you heard about Jack?  
B: Yes, he ..... (promote) to senior manager.

## Употребление

Мы употребляем страдательный залог, когда хотим показать, что само действие важнее, чем лицо, которое его совершает.



The missing climber **was found** yesterday. (Не важно, кто именно нашел потерявшегося альпиниста, важно, что его нашли.)

◆ Лицо, совершающее действие ("агент" действия), вводится предлогом **by** и упоминается лишь тогда, когда это важно или необходимо.

Например: *Australia was discovered by Captain Cook.* (by Captain Cook – личность "агента" действия важна)

◆ "Агент" действия не упоминается, когда:

а) он неизвестен,



Jim's car **was stolen** last night. (Мы не знаем, кто украл его машину.)

б) это не важно,



Champagne **is made** in France. ("Агент" действия не важен.)

в) он очевиден.



The bank robbers **are being chased**. (Ясно, что их преследует полиция.)



Преобразование действительного оборота (active)  
в страдательный (passive)

При преобразовании действительного оборота (предложения со сказуемым в действительном залоге) в страдательный оборот (предложение со сказуемым в страдательном залоге):

- дополнение** (object) действительного оборота становится **подлежащим** (subject) страдательного,
- глагол переходит из действительного в страдательный залог,
- подлежащее** действительного оборота становится **"агентом" действия** (agent).

	subject	verb	object		subject	verb	agent
active	Kim	baked	a cake.	passive	A cake	was baked	by Kim.

Изучите следующую таблицу:

	active	passive
present simple	She <b>types</b> the letters.	The letters <b>are typed</b> .
present continuous	She <b>is typing</b> the letters.	The letters <b>are being typed</b> .
past simple	She <b>typed</b> the letters.	The letters <b>were typed</b> .
past continuous	She <b>was typing</b> the letters.	The letters <b>were being typed</b> .
present perfect simple	She <b>has typed</b> the letters.	The letters <b>have been typed</b> .
past perfect simple	She <b>had typed</b> the letters.	The letters <b>had been typed</b> .
future simple	She <b>will type</b> the letters.	The letters <b>will be typed</b> .
infinitive	She has <b>to type</b> the letters.	The letters have <b>to be typed</b> .
modals (modal + be + pp)	She <b>may type</b> the letters.	The letters <b>may be typed</b> .

- В страдательном залоге употребляются только те глаголы, которые могут иметь прямое дополнение (переходные глаголы). Например: *Susan cleans the silver. The silver is cleaned by Susan.*  
**Но:** *It is snowing today.* (Этот оборот не может быть преобразован в страдательный, поскольку глагол *snow* – непереходный.)
- Слова **people, one, someone/somebody, they, he** и т.п. в качестве "агента" действия в страдательном обороте обычно не употребляются.  
Например: *People watch TV all over the world. TV is watched all over the world (by people).*
- При преобразовании действительного оборота в страдательный личные **местоимения в объектном падеже** (*me, you, him* и т.д.) заменяются **личными местоимениями в именительном падеже** (*I, you, he* и т.д.). Например: *He gave this book to me. I was given this book.* (Мне дали эту книгу.)
- Если в действительном обороте после глагола следует предлог, этот предлог употребляется и в страдательном обороте. Например: *Burglars broke into our house last night. Our house was broken into last night.*

**6** Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- The pop star sang the song.  
*The song was sung by the pop star.*
- The chef hasn't made dinner.  
.....
- An explorer has found a dinosaur egg.  
.....
- Mrs Gates will look after the baby.  
.....
- They won't take him home after the party.  
.....
- Someone left the front door open.  
.....
- Jenny didn't break the window.  
.....
- Someone is using the computer.  
.....
- His brother taught him to drive.  
.....
- Many people speak English.  
.....
- The doctor had already told him to go on a diet.  
.....
- The author is writing a new book.  
.....



### 7 Turn the following questions into the passive.

- Do they make bread in this factory?  
*Is bread made in this factory?*
- Will Susan decorate the bedroom tomorrow?  
.....
- Did they find the ring in the garden?  
.....
- Is Tom drawing the picture?  
.....
- Has Simon sent the invitations yet?  
.....
- Had Paul repaired the door before he left for work?  
.....

#### Примечание.

Для того, чтобы узнать, кто/что совершил/о действие, мы употребляем следующую формулу вопроса: **Who/What ... by?**

Например: **Who was America discovered by?**

### 8 Write questions in the passive to which the words in bold are the answers, as in the examples.

- Captain Cook** discovered Australia.  
*Who was Australia discovered by?*
- A dog** was chasing Paul.  
*What was Paul being chased by?*
- Simon** is going to organise the party.  
.....
- A bee** stung him.  
.....
- Fiona** cooked this delicious turkey.  
.....
- An international company** publishes these books.  
.....
- A bomb** killed the soldier.  
.....

С глаголами, допускающими два дополнения, **ask, bring, tell, send, show, teach, promise, offer, give, pay, lend** и т.п. страдательный оборот может образовываться двумя способами.

**Active:** *Someone sent Helen some flowers.*

**Passive:** a) *Helen was sent some flowers.*

b) *Some flowers were sent to Helen.*

Первый способ употребляется чаще, поскольку обычно нас больше интересует личность (Helen), чем вещь (some flowers).

### 9 Rewrite the sentences in the passive in both ways, as in the example.

- His father gave Billy a new bicycle.  
a) *Billy was given a new bicycle by his father.*  
b) *A new bicycle was given to Billy by his father.*
- Fred has offered Mary a watch.  
a) .....  
b) .....
- Lisa is sending Tim an invitation.  
a) .....  
b) .....
- She brought me some oranges.  
a) .....  
b) .....
- Sonia is going to lend me some money.  
a) .....  
b) .....
- Jack will show me the new car.  
a) .....  
b) .....
- They paid him a lot of money for the job.  
a) .....  
b) .....

### 10 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- They will not deliver the new sofa on Friday.  
*The new sofa will not be delivered on Friday.*
- You can use this saucepan for cooking spaghetti.  
.....
- I have to finish my homework tonight.  
.....
- You must tidy your bedroom.  
.....
- You ought to put these clothes away.  
.....
- The boss gave the secretary some letters to type.  
.....
- We should eat this cake immediately.  
.....
- Sally sent Peter a birthday card.  
.....
- You must take the dog for a walk.  
.....
- The cat is not chasing the mouse.  
.....
- Do they produce oil in Spain?  
.....
- Did a dog bite him?  
.....
- Edward has not recorded a new song.  
.....



**11 Rewrite the following passage in the passive.**

Somebody sent me a bunch of flowers. The man from the flower shop delivered them to my house. He told me that they were a present. A young man had ordered them. He had put no card in the flowers. I still don't know who sent them.



.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**12 Rewrite the following passage in the passive.**

Someone started a fire in the Courtney National Park early yesterday morning. They had used a match and some petrol to start the fire. The fire had burnt a lot of trees before someone called the fire brigade. The police have arrested a man. They are still questioning him.



.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

**Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.**

- 1 A famous artist will paint his portrait.  
**be** His portrait **will be painted by** a famous artist.
- 2 You must post these letters as soon as possible.  
**must** These letters **must be posted** as soon as possible.
- 3 Somebody stole my wallet yesterday.  
**was** My wallet **was stolen** yesterday.

**13 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

- 1 They built the house last year.  
**was** The house ...*was built*... last year.
- 2 They are planting trees in the garden.  
**being** Trees ..... in the garden.
- 3 The dog was chasing the cat around the house.  
**was** The cat ..... around the house by the dog.
- 4 They haven't cleaned the floor yet.  
**been** The floor ..... yet.
- 5 They had eaten all the food by the time I got there.  
**had** All the food ..... by the time I got there.
- 6 You must finish the project by Wednesday afternoon.  
**be** The project ..... by Wednesday afternoon.
- 7 Mr Brown sent us a wedding invitation.  
**was** A wedding invitation ..... to us by Mr Brown.
- 8 They should inform the citizens as soon as possible.  
**should** The citizens ..... as soon as possible.

**14 Fill in the active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.**



Mrs Wilson is a rich young lady. She (1) *lives* (live) in a big house on the outskirts of the city with her husband and her two dogs. Every day, Mrs Wilson (2) ..... (take) into the city centre. Her car (3) ..... (drive) by her chauffeur. She then (4) ..... (go) shopping in her favourite shops. Her bags (5) ..... (carry) by the chauffeur. Mrs Wilson (6) ..... (buy) lots of things every week. She (7) ..... (need) lots of clothes because she goes to lots of parties. In fact, this week she (8) ..... (invite) to a big birthday party which (9) ..... (hold) in a large mansion in the country. All of her friends will be there, so Mrs Wilson (10) ..... (look forward) to it very much.

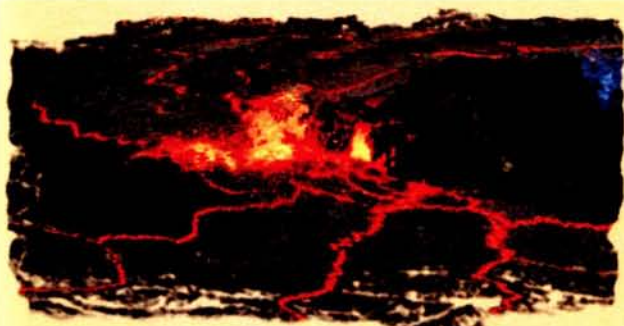


**15 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 The dishes has been washed.
- 2 The letters are being opened every morning in the office.
- 3 Your homework must finished by Monday.
- 4 The woman seen taking the children to school.
- 5 Mike has been tell about the new job.
- 6 The cars stole from the car park.
- 7 The house is been decorated recently.
- 8 The centre will visit by the King next month.

**Revision Box**

**16 Choose the correct answer.**



Pompeii is an ancient town in Italy (1) ...C... was destroyed when a volcano (2) ..... in 79 AD. The lava and ash from the eruption of Mount Vesuvius buried the town along with everything and everyone in it. Most of the site (3) ..... studied by archaeologists (4) ..... have uncovered many objects among the ruins. The town is now a popular tourist attraction and is visited (5) ..... thousands of people each year. They (6) ..... walk along the streets which (7) ..... once a part of the busy market town and (8) ..... now an important part of history.

- |              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 A where    | B who         | C which       |
| 2 A erupted  | B has erupted | C had erupted |
| 3 A has been | B was being   | C had been    |
| 4 A whose    | B they        | C who         |
| 5 A by       | B from        | C with        |
| 6 A could    | B can         | C are able    |
| 7 A was      | B have been   | C were        |
| 8 A were     | B are         | C has been    |

**ORAL Activity**

Max Hunter has inherited an old factory and he has decided to turn it into a club. Look at the pictures and the notes below, then make sentences in the passive, as in the example.

*the walls/painted, the windows/replaced, garden lights/put in, the roof/repared, trees/planted, the sign/put up, the door/fixed*

e.g. *The walls have been painted.*



**WRITING Activity**

Imagine you are Max Hunter. Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and write a letter to your friend telling him about the changes to the factory.

Dear Harry,

I have some exciting news. I've recently inherited an old factory and I've decided to turn it into a club. So far, the walls have been painted .....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Diana had a meeting yesterday.



Today, Diana met Alison. Alison asked her what they had said. Diana told her that they would use her plans.



- ◆ **Прямая речь (direct speech)** – это речь какого-нибудь лица, переданная дословно. Прямая речь заключается в кавычки (' '). *Например: 'I'm very tired,' Mary said.*
- ◆ **Косвенная речь (reported speech\*)** – это речь какого-нибудь лица, переданная точно по смыслу, но не дословно. Она не заключается в кавычки. После вводящего глагола можно употребить союз **that**, но можно и опустить его. *Например: Mary said (that) she was very tired.*

\* Употребляется также термин indirect speech.

### Say – Tell

Глагол **say** употребляется:

- ◆ для введения прямой речи а) **без** предлога **to**, если после “say” не указывается, к кому обращается говорящий, *Например: Jerry said, 'I need some money.'*  
б) **с** предлогом **to**, если после “say” указывается, к кому обращена речь, *Например: Jerry said to me, 'I need some money.'*
- ◆ для введения косвенной речи **без** предлога **to**, когда не указывается, к кому обращена речь, *Например: Jerry said (that) he needed some money.*
- ◆ в выражениях say good morning/afternoon и т.п., say something, say one's prayers, say so и т.п.

Глагол **tell** употребляется без предлога **to**:

- ◆ для введения косвенной речи, когда после “tell” указывается, к кому обращена речь, *Например: Jerry told me, 'I need some money.'* (А не: ~~Jerry told to me that he...~~)  
(И не: ~~Jerry said to me that he...~~)
- ◆ в выражениях tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a secret, tell a story, tell the time, tell the difference, tell sb one's name, tell sb the way, tell one from another и т.п.

#### 1 Fill in the gaps with say or tell in the correct tense.

A Richard (1) ...*told*... Sarah that he was having a party on Saturday night. He (2) ..... that it would start early but it would finish quite late. He (3) ..... her to bring her sister along as well. Sarah (4) ..... she was looking forward to going. Richard (5) ..... her he would probably call again on Friday to (6) ..... her the way to his house.

B 'What shall we do?' asked Carrie. 'It's raining outside, so let's watch television,' I (1) ..... I turned on the television and Carrie (2) ..... to me, 'Look! That's my favourite programme. Let's watch it.' 'To (3) ..... you the truth, I don't like it,' I (4) .....

C 'Good morning, Mr Pearson,' (1) ..... Bella. 'Good morning, Bella,' he replied. 'I've got lots of letters for you to type today,' he (2) ..... to her. 'Alright,' Bella (3) ..... 'I'll type them after I finish writing this report for you.'



## Высказывания в косвенной речи



Yesterday, the Johnsons and the Smiths had a barbecue together. What did Laura say to Jim? What did Ed say to Celia?

Laura told Jim that the hot dogs were delicious and that he was a great cook. Ed told Celia that he was having a great time and that he really liked their new house.

- ◆ Для преобразования высказываний (утвердительных и отрицательных повествовательных предложений) из прямой речи в косвенную употребляются глаголы "say" и "tell". Личные и притяжательные местоимения заменяются в соответствии со смыслом. Например: *Sophie said, 'I bought a new camera yesterday.'* Sophie said (that) **she** had bought a new camera the day before.
- ◆ Если вводящий глагол стоит в past simple, то временные формы других глаголов изменяются следующим образом:

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
<b>Present Simple</b> 'I <b>want</b> to find a better job,' he said.	<b>Past Simple</b> He said he <b>wanted</b> to find a better job.
<b>Present Continuous</b> 'They're <b>playing</b> table tennis,' he said.	<b>Past Continuous</b> He said they <b>were playing</b> table tennis.
<b>Present Perfect</b> 'I've <b>ordered</b> a new fridge,' she said.	<b>Past Perfect</b> She said she <b>had ordered</b> a new fridge.
<b>Past Simple</b> 'Jack <b>left</b> the country,' they said.	<b>Past Perfect</b> They said Jack <b>had left</b> the country.
<b>Future (will)</b> 'I'll <b>send</b> you a letter,' he said.	<b>Conditional (would)</b> He said he <b>would send</b> me a letter.

- ◆ Указательные местоимения, наречия места и маркеры заменяются следующим образом:

Direct Speech	Reported Speech
tonight, today, this week/month/year, etc.	that night, that day, that week/month/year, etc.
now	then, at that time, at once, immediately
yesterday, last night/week/month/year, etc.	the day before/the previous day, the previous night/week/month/year, etc. the night/week/month/year, etc. before
tomorrow, next week/month/year, etc.	the day after/the following day, the next/following week/month/year, etc.
two days/months/years, etc. ago	two days/months/years etc. before
this, these	that, those/the/some
here	there
come	go



- ◆ Когда вводящий глагол стоит в present simple, future simple или в present perfect simple либо когда предложение выражает непреложную истину (general truth), временные формы глаголов в косвенной речи остаются без изменения.

Direct speech: She says, 'I don't like him.'

Reported speech: She says (that) she doesn't like him.

'It is cold in the Arctic,' said the teacher.

The teacher said (that) it is cold in the Arctic.

- ◆ При преобразовании прямой речи в косвенную, формы past continuous, past perfect simple и past perfect continuous не изменяются.

Direct speech: 'I was watching TV while she was cooking,' he said.

Reported speech: He said (that) he was watching TV while she was cooking.

- ◆ В косвенной речи остаются без изменения следующие модальные глаголы: would, could, might, should и ought.

Direct speech: 'I could run fast when I was young,' Tom said.

Reported speech: Tom said (that) he could run fast when he was young.

**2** Fill in the gaps with the correct pronouns or possessive adjectives.

- Mary said, 'I want to go out with my friends.'  
Mary said (that) ...she... wanted to go out with ...her... friends.
- Tom said, 'I have lost my keys.'  
Tom said (that) ..... had lost ..... keys.
- Bob and Marie said, 'We are taking our dog for a walk.'  
Bob and Marie said (that) ..... were taking ..... dog for a walk.
- Andrew said, 'My sister is coming to visit me next week.'  
Andrew said (that) ..... sister was going to visit ..... the following week.
- Mr Jones said, 'I need to buy a present for my wife.'  
Mr Jones said (that) ..... needed to buy a present for ..... wife.
- Father said, 'I want you to wash my car for me.'  
Father said (that) ..... wanted ..... to wash ..... car for .....

**3** Turn from direct into reported speech.

- 'I can't find my bag,' she said.  
*She said (that) she couldn't find her bag.*
- 'They are working in the garden,' he said.  
.....
- 'We got married six months ago,' she said to us.  
.....
- 'I'll go shopping tomorrow,' he said.  
.....
- 'I bought a new car last week,' he said.  
.....
- 'We aren't doing anything next week,' they said.  
.....

- 'I can't go out tonight,' she said to me.  
.....
- 'I forgot to pay the bill,' he said.  
.....
- 'We've brought you a present,' she said to me.  
.....
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow,' she said to Peter.  
.....

**4** In which of the following sentences do the tenses not change? Why? Then, turn the following statements from direct into reported speech.

- 'I'll paint the house next week,' he says.  
*Tenses do not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple. He says (that) he will paint the house.*
- 'I've put the washing in the washing-machine,' Rose said.  
.....
- 'A giraffe is bigger than a mouse,' he said.  
.....
- 'We haven't seen Tom for two weeks,' she said.  
.....
- 'I haven't phoned my uncle since last month,' she says.  
.....
- 'Birds can fly,' the student said.  
.....
- 'He's studying for an exam now,' she said.  
.....
- 'Leaves fall from the trees in autumn,' he said.  
.....
- 'We visited the circus last weekend,' they said.  
.....
- 'She dropped the vase on the floor,' Tony said.  
.....
- 'He took the money to the bank this morning,' she said.  
.....
- 'The earth moves round the sun,' the teacher said.  
.....



Вопросы в косвенной речи



Yesterday, Mary went to the doctor's.

The doctor **asked** Mary **how often** she exercised. She also asked her **if/whether** she **drank** milk.

◆ Для преобразования вопросов из прямой речи в косвенную употребляются слова **ask** или **want to know**.

В косвенных вопросах употребляется порядок слов повествовательного предложения, вопросительный знак опускается. Временные формы, местоимения и маркеры заменяются так же, как и в случае высказываний.

Например: 'Are you working tomorrow morning?' Paul asked her.

Paul asked her if she was working the next morning.

◆ Если прямой вопрос начинается с **вопросительного слова** (who, where, how, when, why, what и т.д.), то и косвенный вопрос начинается с того же вопросительного слова.

Например: 'Why are you late?' Mother asked me. Mother asked me **why** I was late.

◆ Если прямой вопрос начинается со **вспомогательного глагола** (is, do, have и т.д.) или с **модального глагола** (can, may и т.д.), то косвенный вопрос начинается с **if** либо с **whether**.

Например: 'Can you speak French?' they asked me. They asked me **if/whether** I could speak French.

5 Turn the questions from direct into reported speech.

- 1 'How old are you?' he asked me.  
He asked me *how old I was*.
- 2 'When will you call me?' she asked George.  
.....
- 3 She asked, 'Can you play the piano?'  
.....
- 4 He asked, 'Who's there?'  
.....
- 5 'Do you like fish?' she asked Jonathan.  
.....
- 6 'What have you done today?' Mother asked.  
.....
- 7 Jim asked, 'Did you go to work yesterday?'  
.....
- 8 'How did you get here?' he asked.  
.....
- 9 'Have you seen my blue jacket anywhere?' she asked.  
.....
- 10 He asked, 'Will you take me to work tomorrow?'  
.....
- 11 She asked, 'Where have you been?'  
.....
- 12 She asked, 'Will they visit us in the summer?'  
.....

6 There has been a fire in a busy area of your town. Read the reporter's questions and turn them into reported speech.



- 1 'How did the fire start?'  
The reporter asked *how the fire had started*.
- 2 'Who called the fire brigade?'  
The reporter wanted to know .....
- 3 'Did you ask people to leave the building?'  
The reporter asked .....
- 4 'Was anybody injured?'  
The reporter wanted to know .....
- 5 'How many fire-fighters are here now?'  
The reporter asked .....
- 6 'Have any of the houses been damaged?'  
The reporter wanted to know .....



Приказы, просьбы и предложения  
в косвенной речи

Let's make some cards.  
Ruth, sit down please.  
Be careful with the glue.  
Don't make a mess.



The teacher **suggested making** some cards.  
She **asked Ruth to sit down**.  
She **told the children to be careful with the glue**.  
She also **told them not to make a mess**.

◆ Для преобразования **приказов и указаний** из прямой речи в косвенную употребляются глаголы **order** или **tell**:

**order/tell + лицо + (not) to - Infinitive.**

Например:

'Give me your money!' he said to me.

He **ordered me to give him my money**.

'Don't shoot!' he said to them.

He **ordered them not to shoot**.

'Cut the paper in two pieces,' she said to me.

She **told me to cut the paper into two pieces**.

◆ Для преобразования **просьб** употребляются глаголы **ask** или **beg**:

**ask/beg + лицо + (not) to - Infinitive.**

Прямая речь обычно содержит слово 'please'. Например:

'Listen to me, please,' Laura said to Bob.

Laura **asked Bob to listen to her**.

'Please, please don't tell anyone I'm here,' she said to him.

She **begged him not to tell anyone (that) she was there**.

◆ Для преобразования **предложений (suggestion)** употребляется глагол **suggest + -ing form**. Например:

'Let's play a game,' Father said to us.

'We can/could play a game,' Father said to us.

'Shall we play a game?' Father said to us.

'How about playing a game?' Father said to us.

Father **suggested playing** a game.

7

Fill in the gaps with the verbs in the list in the correct form.

order, tell, ask, beg, suggest

- 'Let's call Brian,' Susan said to me.  
Susan ...*suggested*... calling Brian.
- 'Don't make any noise,' Mother said to us.  
Mother ..... us not to make any noise.
- 'Please stay a little longer,' Kate said to her sister.  
Kate ..... her sister to stay a little longer.
- 'Fire!' the General said to the soldiers.  
The General ..... the soldiers to fire.
- 'Please, please forgive me,' she said to him.  
She ..... him to forgive her.

8

Turn the following sentences into reported speech.



- Be careful of the glass! *The fire-fighter told them to be careful of the glass.*
- Stand back! .....
- Bring the light nearer! .....
- Pass me an axe! .....
- Go to the other side of the plane! .....

9

Turn from direct into reported speech.

- Mary said to me, 'Come with me, please.'  
*Mary asked me to go with her.*
- The shop assistant said to the child, 'Don't touch anything.'  
.....
- The secretary said to me, 'Wait here, please.'  
.....
- She said, 'Shall we go swimming?'  
.....
- The park keeper said to them, 'Don't walk on the grass.'  
.....
- He said to them, 'Don't stay out late tonight.'  
.....
- Annie said to Barry, 'Please, please help me.'  
.....



Вводящие глаголы

Помимо "say" и "tell", могут употребляться и другие вводящие глаголы (introductory verbs, или reporting verbs). Эти глаголы более точно передают смысл речи. За ними может следовать как "to"-инфинитив, так и "-ing"-форма. Изучите следующую таблицу:

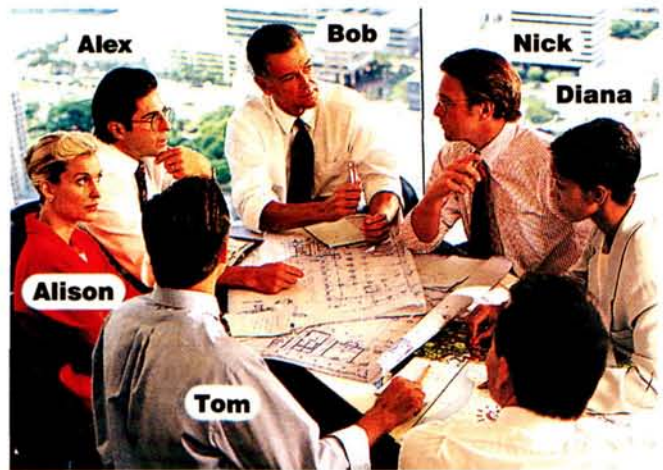
Introductory Verb	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
promise refuse offer	'I'll be home early.' 'No, I won't wash the dishes.' 'Can I get you an aspirin?'	He <b>promised to be</b> home early. He <b>refused to wash</b> the dishes. He <b>offered to get</b> me an aspirin.
advise ask beg order warn	'You should stay in bed.' 'Please post this letter.' 'Please, please listen to me.' 'Don't move!' 'Don't go near the fire.'	He <b>advised me to stay</b> in bed. He <b>asked me to post</b> the letter. He <b>begged her to listen</b> to him. He <b>ordered me not to move</b> . He <b>warned me not to go</b> near the fire.
suggest	'Let's have some tea.' 'Shall we go to Helen's party?'	He <b>suggested having</b> some tea. He <b>suggested going</b> to Helen's party.

10 Choose an introductory verb and turn the following from direct into reported speech.

*advised, asked, ordered, warned, promised, begged, offered, refused, suggested*

- 'I think you should eat more vegetables,' my mother said to me.  
*My mother advised me to eat more vegetables.*
- 'Please get me a glass of water,' he said to Jill.  
.....
- 'No, I won't help you,' she said to Jim.  
.....
- 'I'll buy you something nice for your birthday,' her mother said to her.  
.....
- 'Don't play near the road because it's dangerous,' he said to us.  
.....
- 'Would you like me to do the shopping?' she said.  
.....
- 'Please, please don't leave me alone in the dark,' she said to her parents.  
.....
- 'How about going to the cinema tonight?' he said.  
.....
- 'Go to bed! ... Now!' his father said to him.  
.....
- 'Shall we watch a video?' they said.  
.....

11 The people in the picture had a meeting yesterday in which they discussed some business matters. Read their comments and turn them into reported speech.



- Tom: 'We should advertise on TV.'  
*Tom suggested advertising on TV.*
- Alison: 'I'll help you organise the meeting.'  
.....
- Alex: 'I can give you copies of the plan.'  
.....
- Bob: 'Let's do some research on the subject.'  
.....
- Nick: 'I'll give you all the details next week.'  
.....
- Diana: 'Don't decide until you know the cost.'  
.....



При преобразовании косвенной речи в прямую мы следуем тем же правилам (но в обратном порядке), что и при преобразовании прямой речи в косвенную (см. стр. 93). Помимо этого мы:

- заключаем цитируемое предложение в кавычки,
- указываем говорящего перед прямой речью либо после нее,
- ставим запятую перед прямой речью либо после нее,
- начинаем прямую речь с заглавной буквы,
- ставим вопросительный знак (а не запятую) после прямой речи, если прямая речь – вопрос.

**reported speech:** Jack told me that he was leaving the next day.

**direct speech:** Jack said to me, 'I'm leaving tomorrow.' or 'I'm leaving tomorrow,' Jack said to me.

**reported speech:** The boss asked me if I enjoyed my work.

**direct speech:** 'Do you enjoy your work?' the boss asked me. or  
The boss asked me, 'Do you enjoy your work?'

**12 Turn the following sentences from reported into direct speech.**

- Trevor asked me if I had posted the letter.  
*'Did you post the letter?' Trevor asked me.*
- Sarah told me she was looking for a new job.  
.....
- Brian wanted to know what time the train to Leeds left.  
.....
- She said that she didn't like jogging.  
.....
- He said he would be back the following day.  
.....
- He asked how much my new car had cost.  
.....
- I asked Marie if she could do the shopping for me.  
.....
- Jill asked Roy to close the window.  
.....

**13 Turn from direct into reported speech or vice versa.**

- 'I've finished the housework,' she said.  
*She said (that) she had finished the housework.*
- 'Why did you do that?' he asked her.  
.....
- Susie told her mother that *Titanic* was the best film she had ever seen.  
.....
- He told them to put the rubbish in the bin.  
.....
- 'Please answer the telephone,' he said to her.  
.....
- Alex said that they were going to Hawaii for their honeymoon.  
.....

- 'Are you going out on Saturday night?' Ben asked me.  
.....
- Adam said that he had never ridden a horse before.  
.....
- 'We'll go to the circus tomorrow,' said Mother.  
.....
- Mr Carter told them to pick up the paper from the floor.  
.....
- Julia begged her parents to let her go to the party.  
.....
- Greg said, 'Let's have a party on my birthday.'  
.....

**14 Turn the underlined sentences from reported into direct speech.**



I met an old friend yesterday. I hadn't seen her for two years. I asked what she had been doing. We decided to go for a drink. We sat in a café for three hours. We talked about many different things. She asked me to give her my phone number and she wrote it down. When we left the café, I told her to call me very soon.

*'What have you been doing?' I asked her.*  
.....  
.....



**15 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 He asked me where was the post office.
- 2 She suggested to visit the zoo.
- 3 Mother said, 'You must always say the truth.'
- 4 The doctor told me to not exercise a lot.
- 5 My parents offered giving me a lift to the railway station.
- 6 Our teacher said to us that the test was quite easy.
- 7 She asked how could she contact me.
- 8 He said that Kate had left the last month.
- 9 The old man told good night and went to bed.
- 10 Jenny said me, 'I hate Maths.'

**Revision Box**

**16 Underline the correct word(s).**

- 1 A: Where are you going/do you go?  
B: To work.
- 2 A: Did you do/Have you done your homework yet?  
B: Yes. I was doing/did it last night.
- 3 A: Did you paint the house?  
B: Yes. I did it all by me/myself.
- 4 A: Can you get the sugar from the shelf?  
B: No, I'm not tall too/enough to reach it.
- 5 A: Do you still play tennis?  
B: No, I used to/didn't use to play every week, but I don't any more.
- 6 A: Do I have to go to the shops today?  
B: No, you needn't/mustn't. I'll go instead.
- 7 A: Why are your clothes all wet?  
B: I was washing/have been washing the dog!
- 8 A: Have you read this book?  
B: Of course. It is written/was written by my aunt!
- 9 A: Who's that woman over there?  
B: It's the woman whose/who's son is in my class at school.
- 10 A: Shall/Must we go out tonight?  
B: Yes. Let's go to the cinema.  
A: Okay. I have to/will meet you there at 8 o'clock.
- 11 A: I need some paper.  
B: There is some in the drawer who/which is on your right.
- 12 A: Nicola's hair is short now.  
B: Really? It used to/didn't use to be really long.

**ORAL Activity**

Tim Stevens, the famous actor, gave a press conference yesterday. Lucy Morton, a young reporter, attended the conference. Read what Tim Stevens said. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

SA: What did Tim Stevens say?

SB: He said that he was very happy to be in our country.

SA: What else did he say?

1 I'm very happy to be in your country.

2 I have already been to Venice and Florence.

3 I went to France two months ago.

4 I starred in a film called 'L'amour'.

5 I'll return with my wife in the summer.

**WRITING Activity**

Lucy is writing an article about Tim Stevens for the magazine she works for. Complete the article using the information from the Oral Activity.

**FAMOUS ACTOR VISITS OUR COUNTRY**

Tim Stevens, who I'm sure all of you know, was here for a short visit. I was lucky enough to attend the press conference he gave yesterday. This is what Mr Stevens told the reporters. He said that he was very happy to be in our country. He also said .....

.....  
 .....  
 .....



### Условные предложения

- Различают три типа **условных предложений** (conditional sentences). Каждый тип состоит из двух частей: придаточного предложения (if - clause), выражающего условие (hypothesis), и главного предложения (main clause), выражающего следствие (result), которое вытекает из этого условия. Обычно условное придаточное предложение начинается со слова **if**.

if - clause

main clause

*If you are late, you will miss the bus.*  
(hypothesis) (result)

- Когда условное придаточное предложение стоит перед главным предложением, они разделяются запятой. В обратном случае – нет. Например: *If Peter has time, he will come to visit us. Peter will come to visit us if he has time.*



*If you go to New York, you can see the Statue of Liberty.*

- Условные предложения первого типа выражают **реальную** либо **очень вероятную** ситуацию в **настоящем** или **будущем**. Они образуются следующим образом:

If - clause	Main clause
If + present simple	→ future simple
	→ present simple
	→ imperative
	→ can/must/may, etc. + bare infinitive

- В условных придаточных предложениях вместо **if ... not** можно использовать **unless**. После **unless** глагол всегда употребляется в утвердительной форме. Например: *If you don't hurry, we'll be late for school. Unless you hurry, we'll be late for school. (A не: ~~Unless you don't hurry...~~)*

Условные предложения. Выражение желания

### Условные предложения первого типа



*If Robert studies hard, he will pass his exams.*



*Water turns into ice if the temperature falls below 0°C.*



*If you don't understand, look at the example.*

- 1** Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *If you go to London, you can see Big Ben.*

1  London/ Big Ben	2  Rome/the Colosseum	3  New York/the Empire State Building
4  Paris/the Eiffel Tower	5  Egypt/the Pyramids	6  Sydney/the Sydney Opera House
7  Venice/some gondolas	8  Hawaii/some palm trees	



**2 Match column A with column B in order to make correct type 1 conditional sentences, as in the example.**

e.g. *If you are tired, go to bed.*

Column A	Column B
1 tired	a make a sandwich
2 hungry	b get something to drink
3 bored	c go to bed
4 thirsty	d take one of these pills
5 seasick	e read a good book

**3 Fill in unless or if.**

- We won't go on holiday ...*unless*... we can take our dog with us.
- ..... we don't buy it now, we'll have to get it later.
- ..... you go to bed late, you'll be tired in the morning.
- I can't finish my homework ..... you help me.
- We'll have a picnic on Saturday ..... the weather is bad.
- You'll catch a cold ..... you wear your coat.
- I'll open the window ..... I get too hot.

**4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Add a comma where necessary.**

- If you ...*have*... (have) toothache, go to the dentist.
- If Peter ..... (do) lots of exercise he'll be fit and healthy.
- Please call me if you ..... (need) any help.
- ..... Sarah ..... (be) angry if we don't go to her party?
- Cathy will be able to go on holiday if she ..... (save) enough money.
- Unless it ..... (rain) we'll go for a walk.
- If you ..... (work) hard you may be promoted.
- ..... you ..... (give) me a call if you have time tomorrow?
- If you don't do your homework I ..... (not/let) you watch TV.
- Mary won't go to Australia unless I ..... (pay) for her tickets.
- If he ..... (arrive) on time we'll have dinner before we go out.

**5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

- A: I'd like a cup of coffee.  
B: Well, if you ...*hold*... (hold) the baby for five minutes, I ..... (make) it for you.
- A: I must go to the bank.  
B: If you ..... (leave) now, you ..... (get) there before it closes.
- A: I can't do everything myself!  
B: Well, if you ..... (wash) the dishes, I ..... (cook) the meal.
- A: Are you going on holiday this year?  
B: Yes, I ..... (go) to Spain for two weeks if I ..... (have) some time off work.
- A: I want to cook something special tonight.  
B: Great, if I ..... (finish) work early, I ..... (give) you a hand.
- A: Could I have a chocolate biscuit, please?  
B: Yes, if you ..... (look) in the cupboard, you ..... (find) some cakes as well.

**6 Rewrite the sentences, as in the examples.**

- If Harry doesn't phone, we'll leave without him.  
*Unless Harry phones, we'll leave without him.*
- Unless Sheila returns the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.  
*If Sheila doesn't return the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.*
- Sarah will be disappointed if you don't send her a birthday card.  
.....
- Maria won't go to the theatre if Peter doesn't go with her.  
.....
- If you don't pay the electricity bill, it will be cut off.  
.....
- Unless Kate comes home soon, her parents will call the police.  
.....
- If the children don't behave themselves, they won't go to the zoo.  
.....
- Unless my mother offers to help me, I won't have time to make all the preparations.  
.....
- Unless you tidy your room, I won't take you to the party.  
.....
- If Dennis doesn't write soon, I will be very upset.  
.....



Условные предложения второго типа



If I had a lot of money, I would buy a big house and I'd go on a cruise round the world.

◆ Условные предложения второго типа выражают **нереальную, воображаемую** либо **маловероятную** ситуацию, которая вряд ли реализуется в **настоящем** или **будущем**. Они образуются следующим образом:

If - clause	Main clause
If + past simple	would/could/might + bare infinitive

Например: *If I had the time, I would take up a sport.* (Сейчас у меня нет времени, поэтому я вряд ли займусь спортом. – маловероятная ситуация.)

- ◆ Мы можем употреблять **were** вместо **was** для всех лиц. Например: *If Peter was/were here, he would tell us what to do.*
- ◆ Для того, чтобы дать совет можно употребить выражение **If I were you ...**. Например: *If I were you, I'd talk to him about my problem.*

7

Choose one of the prompts from the list to say what you would do in each of the situations below.

*order a pizza, complain to the manager, light some candles, go to hospital, call the police, stay in bed*

- You see someone robbing a bank.  
*If I saw someone robbing a bank, I would call the police.*
- A shop assistant is rude to you.
- You fall over and break your arm.
- You burn your dinner.
- There is a power cut in your house.
- You catch a bad cold.

8

Look at the pictures and the prompts. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

e.g. SA: *Shall I paint the fence red or green?*  
SB: *If I were you, I'd paint it red.*

1 		2 	
paint the fence/red/green		order a salad/a sandwich	
3 		4 	
have some coffee/orange juice		buy a dog/a goldfish	
5 		6 	
go to Japan/France		take up golf/baseball	

9

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct type 2 conditional sentences.

- If I ...*were*... (be) you, I ...*would study*... (study) for the exams.
- If we ..... (have) a car, we ..... (go) for a drive in the country.
- Kim ..... (buy) some new clothes if she ..... (have) enough money.
- If cameras ..... (not/cost) so much, we ..... (buy) one.
- John ..... (lend) you some money if you ..... (ask) him.
- He ..... (open) the door if he ..... (have) the key.
- We ..... (paint) the house if we ..... (have) the time.
- If she ..... (get) good grades, she ..... (go) to university.
- If I ..... (be) rich, I ..... (never/ work) again.
- Helen ..... (post) the letters if she ..... (have) some stamps.



Условные предложения третьего типа



Jack missed the bus yesterday, so he was late for work.

If Jack **hadn't missed** the bus, he **wouldn't have been** late for work yesterday.

Условные предложения третьего типа выражают воображаемые ситуации в прошлом, то есть ситуации в прошлом, которые не реализовались. Они образуются следующим образом:

If - clause	Main clause
If + past perfect	→ would/could/might + + have + past participle

Например: If she **had called** earlier, I **would have told** her about the meeting. (Она позвонила поздно, поэтому я не предупредил ее о встрече.)

**10** Richard Brooks was very upset yesterday because he missed an important meeting. Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.



e.g. If the airline hadn't been on strike, his flight wouldn't have been delayed. If his flight hadn't been delayed, ...

- the airline / not be / on strike →
- his flight / not be / delayed →
- he / arrive / in New York / on time →
- he / attend / the meeting →
- he / sign / the contract →
- his boss / be / pleased with him →
- she / give / him / a promotion

**11** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct type 3 conditional sentences.

- If you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) in a hurry, you ...*wouldn't/might not have forgotten*... (not/forget) your keys.
- If he ..... (remember) earlier, he ..... (send) her a birthday card.
- If you ..... (not/be) ill, you ..... (go) to the party.
- Jason ..... (not/break) his arm if he ..... (be) more careful.
- Helen ..... (get) wet if she ..... (not/take) her umbrella.
- If I ..... (do) my homework, my teacher ..... (not/shout) at me.
- You ..... (pass) the test if you ..... (study) more.
- If she ..... (close) the gate, the rabbit ..... (not/run away).
- She ..... (lose) her keys if I ..... (not/pick) them up.
- If he ..... (save) some money, he ..... (be able) to go on holiday.

**12** Read the story below and write type 3 conditional sentences, as in the example.



Ben offered to help his neighbour fix the roof so he climbed up the ladder. He fell off the ladder and broke his leg. He went to hospital. He met Linda there. They fell in love and got married six months later.

- If Ben hadn't offered to help his neighbour fix the roof, he wouldn't have climbed up the ladder.
- If he hadn't climbed up the ladder, .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



13

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 A: Mum, Dad shouted at me.  
B: Well, if you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) naughty, he ...*wouldn't have shouted*... (not/shout) at you.
- 2 A: I don't know what to do about my problem.  
B: If I ..... (be) you, I ..... (talk) to my boss.
- 3 A: If I ..... (win) lots of money, I ..... (buy) a new house.  
B: That's a nice idea. I ..... (buy) a new car.
- 4 A: I failed my exam today.  
B: Well, if you ..... (study) harder, you ..... (not/fail).
- 5 A: I've got terrible toothache.  
B: If I ..... (be) you, I ..... (go) to the dentist's.
- 6 A: I'm sorry.  
B: What for?  
A: If I ..... (not/leave) the door open, the puppy ..... (not/escape).
- 7 A: Why are you upset?  
B: Because it's all my fault. If I ..... (not/be) late, we ..... (not/miss) the bus.
- 8 A: Where ..... (you/go) if you ..... (can) travel anywhere in the world?  
B: If I ..... (can), I ..... (go) to America.
- 9 A: I've lost my bag with my purse and my keys inside.  
B: Well, if I ..... (be) you, I ..... (report) it to the police.
- 10 A: Ouch! I dropped a glass and cut my finger.  
B: Well, if you ..... (be) careful, you ..... (not/cut) yourself.

14

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- 1 If you ...*had looked*... (look) both ways before crossing the street, you wouldn't have been knocked down.
- 2 If I ..... (be) you, I would phone my mother tonight.
- 3 If he hadn't stopped the car, he ..... (have) an accident.
- 4 I ..... (give) some money to charity if I won a competition.
- 5 Unless we ..... (leave) now, we'll be late.
- 6 Your friend wouldn't have phoned if you ..... (not/meet) her in the street.

7

If I hadn't woken up early, I ..... (be) late for work.

8

If I ..... (have) more time, I would tidy the garden.

9

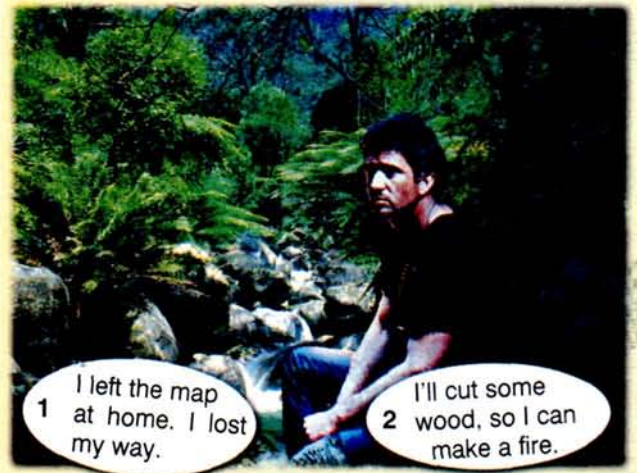
If John ..... (phone), can you take a message?

10

If I were you, I ..... (get) someone to help me.

15

Henry is lost in the forest and he's thinking. Use his thoughts to write conditional sentences, as in the example. Then, state the type of conditional (1, 2 or 3).



1 I left the map at home. I lost my way.

2 I'll cut some wood, so I can make a fire.

3 I don't have any food. I'm hungry.

4 I'll sit under a tree. I won't get wet.

5 I'll get some water from the stream. I can have a drink.

6 No one can hear me. I can't shout for help.

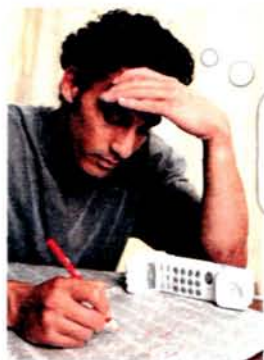
7 It's dark. I can't find the path.

1 If I hadn't left the map at home, I wouldn't have lost my way. (3)

- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....



## Выражение желания



*I wish  
I could  
find a job.*



*I wish  
I hadn't  
parked my  
car here.*



*I wish my son  
would stop  
interrupting  
me.*

Мы употребляем глагол **wish** или сочетание **if only** для выражения пожеланий, сожалений, желаний (wishes). **If only** выражает желание более убедительное, чем **I wish**.

- ◆ Мы употребляем **wish/if only + past simple**, когда нам хотелось бы, чтобы что-то было по-другому **в настоящем**.

Например: *I wish/If only I had a lot of money.* (Но на самом деле у меня мало денег.)

- ◆ Мы употребляем **wish/if only + past perfect**, когда хотим выразить сожаление по поводу того, что произошло (или не произошло) **в прошлом**.

Например: *I wish I had come to your party last night.* (Но я, к сожалению, не был на вашей вечеринке.)

*If only I had listened to your advice.* (Жаль, что я не послушал твоего совета.)

- ◆ Мы употребляем **wish/if only + would** для выражения:

а) вежливого требования, Например: *I wish you would put your things away.*

б) желания изменить ситуацию, желания изменить чье-то поведение (поскольку оно нас раздражает). Например: *I wish it would stop raining.* (желание изменить ситуацию)

*If only Susan would stop playing the music so loud.* (желание изменить чье-то поведение)

Примечание а) После **wish** или **if only** в первом и третьем лице единственного числа вместо **was** можно употреблять **were**. Употребление **were** является более официальным.

Например: *I wish I were taller.* (официальный стиль)

*I wish I was taller.* (разговорный стиль)

б) После личных местоимений **I** и **we** вместо **would** мы употребляем **could**.

Например: *I wish I could help you.* (А не: ~~I wish I would help you.~~)

16

Tony has got a bad cold. He has to stay in bed. Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish I didn't have a temperature.*



- I've got a temperature.
- I've got a sore throat.
- I want to play outside in the snow, but I can't.
- I have to take medicine.
- I have to stay in bed.
- I can't go to my friend's party tonight.
- None of my friends are here with me.

17

Scott has been on holiday. He had a terrible time. Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish it hadn't rained every day.*



- It rained every day.
- The beach was a long way from the hotel.
- The hotel was dirty.
- My hotel room was small.
- I lost my luggage.
- My wallet was stolen.



**18** Mrs Taylor is annoyed with her neighbours. What does she say? Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *I wish Alan wouldn't play his trumpet late at night.*

1 	2 	3 
Alan/play his trumpet late at	Mrs Parker's dog/ bark all day	Mr Fox/mow the lawn at 5 am
4 	5 	6 
Mrs Edison/leave rubbish on the pavement	the Smiths/have a party every weekend	Miss Brown/ pick my flowers

**19** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: It's still raining.  
B: Yes, I wish it *...would stop...* (stop). I want to go out for a walk.
- A: Have you seen that film?  
B: No, I wish I ..... (see) it when it was on at the cinema.
- A: You look tired today.  
B: I've been busy. I wish I ..... (do) my Christmas shopping earlier.
- A: Lisa, I wish you ..... (remember) to take the dog for a walk.  
B: Sorry, I'll go now.
- A: Do you like your job, Doris?  
B: Yes, but I wish I ..... (not/have) to travel so far every day.
- A: Did you have a good holiday?  
B: Yes, but I wish I ..... (be) still on holiday now.
- A: Do you like your new car?  
B: Yes, but I wish it ..... (not/cost) so much.
- A: I hate travelling by bus.  
B: So do I. I wish I ..... (can) drive.

**20** Read the following sentences. What wishes would you make corresponding to the words in bold?

- Your car has broken down so you have to walk to work.  
*I wish I didn't have to walk to work.*
- You want to bake a cake, but you can't remember the recipe.
- It is raining heavily and you can't find your umbrella.
- You didn't remember to lock the front door** and thieves broke in.
- You are on a diet**, but you want to eat some chocolate.
- You are having an exam today, but **you haven't studied at all**.
- You want to go on holiday, but **you haven't got enough money**.

**ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ**

Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- I think Tom should look for a better job.  
**would** If I **were Tom**, I **would look for a better job**.
- Mary regrets shouting at her friend.  
**had** Mary **wishes she had not shouted** at her friend.
- Why don't you stop complaining?  
**wish** I **wish you would stop** complaining.

**21** Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- Peter regrets spending his holidays with his family.  
**had** Peter *...wishes he hadn't spent...* his holidays with his family.
- Why don't you stop spending your money on useless things?  
**wish** I ..... spending your money on useless things.
- You should go on a diet, Sheila.  
**would** If I ..... on a diet, Sheila.
- Why don't you tidy your room more often?  
**wish** I ..... tidy your room more often.

**22** Correct the mistakes.

- I wish I would go home now.
- If I were you, I will ask my father's advice.
- Unless you don't ask her, she won't come.
- I wish you will listen to me.
- I wish I saw the play when it was on at the theatre.
- I wish I will go on long holidays to hot places.
- If I will have time, I will tidy up before I go out.



# Revision Box

**23** Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.

- Mother threw that box away weeks ago.  
*That box was thrown away weeks ago (by Mother).*
- The maid polished the silver yesterday.  
.....
- We must take the dog to the vet.  
.....
- The mayor will open the new cinema tomorrow.  
.....
- We couldn't put out the fire because of the wind.  
.....
- Have you done the washing yet?  
.....

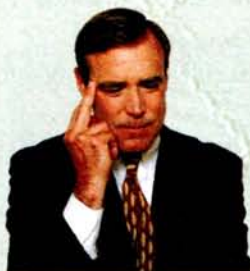
**24** Choose the correct answer.

- I ...A... you as soon as I get there.  
A will phone B phone C am phoning
- Jason said that he ..... to Florida before.  
A had never been B have never been  
C will never be
- You ..... tidy your room before you go to the cinema.  
A may to B must C must to
- James ..... the newspaper when the phone rang.  
A reads B is reading C was reading
- This photograph ..... by my grandfather.  
A was taken B took C taken
- My sister made this cake all by .....  
A herself B her C she
- 'Whose bag is this?' 'It's .....'  
A me B mine C my
- Liz is tired. She ..... the windows all morning.  
A has been cleaning B is cleaning  
C has cleaned
- When I arrived, Paul .....  
A leaves B already left C had already left
- Michael and Steven are friends. They ..... like football.  
A both B all C neither

## ORAL Activity

Edward Simpson and Laura Smithers aren't very happy with their lives. Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.

e.g. Edward wishes he didn't have a stressful job.  
He wishes his wife wouldn't spend so much money on clothes.



- has a stressful job
- his wife spends a lot of money on clothes
- his children ask him for money all the time
- has no time for himself
- feels lonely
- doesn't go out often
- has difficulty making friends
- doesn't have any hobbies

## WRITING Activity

Edward and Laura sent letters to Dorothy Forester, who is a counsellor, asking for advice. First, read Dorothy's letter to Edward and put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then, write Dorothy's letter of advice to Laura.

Dear Mr Simpson,

Thank you for your letter asking for my advice.

To begin with, if I (1) ..... (be) you, I would try to find ways to change my life. If you took time off work more often, you (2) ..... (not/feel) so stressed. If you asked your wife to stop spending a lot of money, she (3) ..... (listen) to you. Your children would also stop asking you for money all the time if you (4) ..... (be) stricter. Finally, you would feel a lot better if you (5) ..... (take up) a hobby and made some time for yourself.

I hope my advice will help.

Best wishes,  
Dorothy



# Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

- James ...**A**... when Wendy came into the room.  
A was sleeping B slept C has been sleeping
- I think I ..... go to university when I leave school, but I'm not sure yet.  
A should B will C am going
- My mother always ..... the clothes on Monday.  
A is washing B has washed C washes
- They ..... here for twenty years.  
A work B have been working C were working
- Greg ..... down, opened the book and began to read.  
A had sat B sat C was sitting
- He ..... a magazine once a week, but now he doesn't.  
A used to buy B had bought C didn't use to buy
- We ..... on holiday to Italy tomorrow.  
A have gone B go C are going
- The train to London ..... at six o'clock in the morning.  
A leaves B leave C has left
- At four o'clock yesterday afternoon, Chris ..... his birthday presents.  
A opens B was opening C has opened
- The children ..... to bed by the time the guests arrived.  
A have already gone B will go C had already gone

## 2 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- It isn't necessary for you to wear a suit.  
**have** You ...*don't have to wear*... a suit.
- You are not allowed to go out after dark.  
**must** You ..... after dark.
- It's possible that she'll visit us tomorrow.  
**may** She ..... tomorrow.
- I'm sure they're on holiday.  
**must** They ..... on holiday.
- I'm bored. Let's go somewhere else.  
**shall** I'm bored. .... somewhere else?
- You don't have to go to work on Saturday.  
**needn't** You ..... on Saturday.
- I advise you to look for a job soon.  
**ought** You ..... a job soon.

## 3 Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.

- You must wash the car today.  
*The car must be washed today.*
- They are taking him to hospital now.  
.....
- Who will make the speech?  
.....
- The cat has destroyed the flowers.  
.....
- Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.  
.....
- Someone sent Susan a red rose.  
.....
- The fire had burnt down the house by the time the fire brigade arrived.  
.....
- Who invented the television?  
.....

## 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- A: I've lost my purse. Have you seen it?  
B: No. If you ...*had been*... (be) more careful, you wouldn't have lost it.
- A: Did you buy that dress you saw?  
B: No, but I wish I ..... (buy) it. It was lovely.
- A: You should read this article. It's really interesting.  
B: Pass me my glasses. I can't see unless I ..... (wear) them.
- A: If only I ..... (go) to the party.  
B: You can go if you help me first.
- A: Can you lend me some money?  
B: I would if I ..... (have) any, but I'm broke at the moment.
- A: You failed your exam because you didn't study.  
B: I know. I wish I ..... (study) more.
- A: Do you want to come on holiday with me this year?  
B: I will come if I ..... (have) enough money.
- A: If only I ..... (not/spend) so much money this month.  
B: Yes, we'd be able to go out for a meal tonight.
- A: That music is very loud.  
B: I wish Tom ..... (not/play) his music so loud. It gives me a headache.
- A: Shall we go to the party on Friday night?  
B: We'll go unless I ..... (be) too tired.



**5 Choose the correct item.**

- 1 You ...**B**... borrow my notebook if you want to.  
A are able to    B can    C might
- 2 I ..... stay late at work tonight. There is lots of work to do.  
A have to    B can    C needn't
- 3 Charlie ..... speak German when he was young, but now he can.  
A can't    B could    C couldn't
- 4 You ..... ask for directions if you get lost.  
A should    B are able to    C mustn't
- 5 ..... you water the plants for me?  
A May    B Will    C Shall
- 6 Bill ..... get a new job after he had completed the training course.  
A should    B can    C was able to
- 7 '..... I help you, sir?' 'Yes please.'  
A May    B Must    C Will
- 8 She ..... visit us on Sunday if she has time.  
A might    B shall    C mustn't

**6 Turn from direct into reported speech. Use an appropriate introductory verb where necessary.**

- 1 Janet said, 'I'm leaving for Jamaica tomorrow.'  
*Janet said that she was leaving for Jamaica the following day.*
- 2 Paul said to me, 'Open the door for me, please.'  
.....
- 3 Anna said, 'Let's go ice-skating this weekend.'  
.....
- 4 'What time is it?' he said to me.  
.....
- 5 Jonathan said to them, 'Please, please don't go without me.'  
.....
- 6 Amanda said to me, 'I have found a new job.'  
.....
- 7 Samantha said to Tim, 'I'll send you a postcard from Italy.'  
.....
- 8 Mother said, 'I'll bake a cake for the party.'  
.....
- 9 The fire-fighter said to the people, 'Don't go into the house.'  
.....
- 10 Brian said, 'No, I won't type the report.'  
.....
- 11 'Can you give me a lift?' she asked her father.  
.....

**7 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form.**



My best friend is called Pam. She likes (1) *going*... (go) to the theatre and she also enjoys (2) ..... (read). She is always happy (3) ..... (help) anybody and doesn't mind (4) ..... (do) the housework for her mother every week. She tries to avoid (5) ..... (argue) with other people and usually manages (6) ..... (keep) a happy smile on her face. She has got lots of nice clothes and she lets me (7) ..... (borrow) them sometimes when we go out together. I always look forward to (8) ..... (see) Pam because she is very funny and she makes me (9) ..... (laugh).

**8 Underline the correct word(s).**

- 1 This is my picture. I drew it me/myself.
- 2 The reason why/where I'm late is that I missed the bus.
- 3 Is this bicycle your/yours?
- 4 That house was built/built by Harry and Sally.
- 5 If only he hadn't forgotten/didn't forget to post the letter.
- 6 That's the girl who/whose father is a policeman.
- 7 That's your coat. Put it/its away now, please.
- 8 He has worked/is working in this factory for twenty years.
- 9 Tommy is living/lived by himself at the moment.
- 10 This vase was a gift from my parents. They gave it to I/me.
- 11 Laura was able to/could repair her bicycle when it got a flat tyre.
- 12 This is the bag which/who I bought in France.
- 13 If I will see/see Peter, I'll give him your message.
- 14 That's the house that/where I lived when I was a child.
- 15 Shall/Will I answer the door for you?
- 16 Gary, which/who lives next door, owns a dog and two cats.



## Прилагательные



This is a **small** village. It looks **peaceful**. There are some **lovely** old houses.

- ◆ **Прилагательные** (adjectives) характеризуют существительные (a **big** car). Прилагательные имеют одну и ту же форму для единственного и для множественного числа.  
Например: a **small** house – **small** houses
- ◆ Прилагательные обычно ставятся перед существительными. Например: a **beautiful** girl. После глагола **to be** и глаголов **look, smell, sound, feel, taste** и т.п. прилагательные могут употребляться без существительного.  
Например: Jack is **tall**. You look **sad**.
- ◆ Прилагательные можно разделить на два вида: **opinion adjectives** (**beautiful, good** и т.п.) – прилагательные, выражающие мнение говорящего о ком-то или о чем-то, и **fact adjectives** (**long, strong, young** и т.п.) – прилагательные, характеризующие возраст, размер, цвет и т.д.

### ПОРЯДОК СЛЕДОВАНИЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫХ

- ◆ Opinion adjectives обычно употребляются перед fact adjectives.  
Например: a **beautiful** silk dress
- ◆ Когда существительное описывается двумя или более прилагательными, они обычно следуют в таком порядке:

Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material
a small	old	square	blue	Thai	silk scarf

- ◆ Однако, длинный ряд прилагательных обычно не употребляется. Как правило, существительное описывается одним, двумя или, в крайнем случае, тремя прилагательными.  
Например: an **expensive** **Persian** **silk** carpet

1

Fill in the gaps with the correct adjective from the list.

lovely, fresh, quiet, cosy, bright, excellent, tall, comfortable

The cottage was beautiful. It had a 1) ...**cosy**... atmosphere. The rooms were small but 2) ..... There was a 3) ..... fire burning in the fireplace, and the smell of 4) ..... roses filled each room. The old furniture was in 5) ..... condition. The garden was 6) ..... There were 7) ..... trees all round the garden and colourful flowers near the cottage. It was very 8) ..... and peaceful. I didn't want to leave.

2

Fill in the correct adjective.

oval, careful, thick, adventurous, long, generous

- 1 Explorers are brave and .....**adventurous**.....
- 2 Rugby balls aren't round, they're .....
- 3 Uncle Sam is a very ..... man. He always brings us gifts when he visits us.
- 4 This book is very ..... It doesn't fit in my bag.
- 5 This dress is too ..... I need to shorten it.
- 6 Ricky is a ..... driver.

3

You have inherited the following things from your grandmother. Describe them by putting the adjectives in the right order.

e.g. a **small** wooden table

- 1 a wooden /small/ table
- 2 some round / china /beautiful plates
- 3 a crystal /Venetian/ blue /vase
- 4 a(n) gold /expensive /ring
- 5 two silver /old/ candlesticks
- 6 a(n) antique /wooden/ lovely /radio



Наречия



Farmers wake up **early** in the morning.  
They work **hard** all day.  
They go home **late** in the evening.

- ◆ Наречие (**adverb**) может быть как одним словом (*carefully*), так и целым выражением\* (*in the park*). Наречия указывают образ действия (*how*), место (*where*), время (*when*), частоту (*how often*) и т.д.

Например: He drives **carefully**. (*How does he drive? Carefully. – adverb of manner – наречие образа действия*)

Your coat is **here**. (*Where is it? Here. – adverb of place – наречие места*)

He left for Italy **yesterday**. (*When did he leave? Yesterday. – adverb of time – наречие времени*)

He **usually** eats out. (*How often does he eat out? Usually. – adverb of frequency – наречие частоты*)

\* Обычно такое выражение не называют наречием, а относят к более общему понятию *adverbial group*.

- ◆ Наречия обычно следуют после глаголов.  
Например: He **walks slowly**.
- ◆ Наречия частоты следуют после вспомогательных глаголов и глагола *to be*, но перед смысловыми глаголами. Например:  
He **is always** on time for appointments.  
He **has never** visited Paris.  
He **always** comes to work on time.

Образование наречий

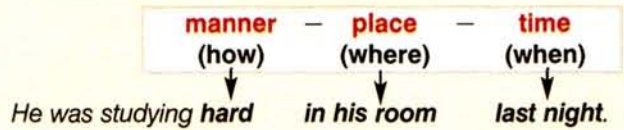
- ◆ Обычно наречия образуются путем прибавления **-ly** к прилагательному.  
Например: *dangerous* - *dangerously*
- ◆ В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на **-le**, опускается **-e** и прибавляется **-y**.  
Например: *gentle* - *gently*
- ◆ В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на **согласный + у**, опускается **-у** и прибавляется **-ily**. Например: *easy* - *easily*
- ◆ В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на **-i**, прибавляется **-ly**.  
Например: *wonderful* - *wonderfully*

- ◆ Некоторые наречия не образуются по рассмотренным выше правилам. Они имеют либо совершенно отличную от прилагательного форму, либо полностью совпадают по форме с прилагательным.

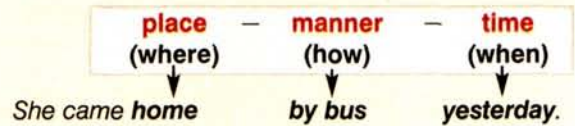
Adjective		Adverb
good	→	well
fast	→	fast
hard	→	hard
early	→	early
late	→	late

ПОРЯДОК СЛЕДОВАНИЯ НАРЕЧИЙ

- ◆ Когда в предложении есть два или более наречия, они обычно следуют в таком порядке:



- ◆ Если в предложении есть глагол, выражающий движение (*go, come, leave* и т.д.), то наречия следуют в таком порядке:



4 Write the adverbs of the adjectives in the list in the correct box.

*bad, quiet, impossible, easy, noisy, careful, horrible, lazy, simple*

-ly	<del>е</del> → ly	consonant + <del>е</del> → ily

5 Put the words from the list below into the correct column.

*good, nicely, well, monthly, sadly, cheap, tall, strongly, fast, cold, early, softly, wide, carefully, late, pretty, loudly, hard*

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective and Adverb



# Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

**6 Put the adverbs from the list below into the correct box.**

*sadly, quickly, here, last month, always, never, there, slowly, somewhere, tomorrow, cheerfully, often, now, last week, sometimes, anywhere*

<p><b>how</b> (adverbs of manner)</p>	<i>sadly</i>
<p><b>where</b> (adverbs of place)</p>	
<p><b>when</b> (adverbs of time)</p>	
<p><b>how often</b> (adverbs of frequency)</p>	

**7 Choose an appropriate adjective from the list, turn it into an adverb and put it in the correct sentence.**

*careless, fluent, proud, polite, happy, angry, heavy, serious, quick, careful*

- The children were playing ..... *happily* .....
- The man drove ..... and crashed his car.
- The teacher shouted ..... because the students were making too much noise.
- Jonathan speaks English .....
- It was raining ..... yesterday, so we stayed indoors.
- The shop assistant placed the crystal vase ..... on the shelf.
- I asked the man ..... to help me cross the road.
- Harry ran ..... to catch the bus, but it had already left.
- The actor who won the Academy Award was smiling ..... on the stage.
- He looked at me ..... and told me never to lie to him again.

**8 Underline the correct word.**

- A: I'm going to the shops now.  
B: Make sure you carry the eggs careful/carefully. Don't break them.
- A: I'm going to Alison's house for dinner tonight.  
B: You'll enjoy it. Alison is a very good/well cook.
- A: Have you finished that puzzle already?  
B: Yes, it was really easy/easily.
- A: Mr Jones shouted angry/angrily today.  
B: I know. He was in a very bad/badly mood all day.
- A: Your mother is always cheerful/cheerfully, isn't she?  
B: Yes, she is always in a well/good mood.

**9 Underline the correct word.**

I organised a surprise party for my friend, Edith, last weekend. All the guests arrived early and waited **1) quiet/quietly** until Edith got there. When she walked through the door, we all cheered **2) loud/loudly**. We went into the garden because it was a very **3) warm/warmly** day. The guests all gave Edith **4) nice/nicely** presents and Edith thanked them **5) sincere/sincerely**. We danced **6) happily/happy** to the music and had a **7) wonderful/wonderfully** time. The party was **8) successful/successfully**.

**10 Put the words in the correct order.**

- always / wake up / I / early  
*I always wake up early.*
- by plane / we / to Spain / went  
.....
- to work / she / ran / quickly  
.....
- every afternoon / sleeps / my dog / in the garden / peacefully  
.....
- they / in the kitchen / quietly / were talking  
.....
- all morning / happily / he / played / in his room  
.....
- they / the street / carefully / crossed  
.....
- yesterday / by taxi / I / went / to work  
.....
- in winter / they / never / go / to the beach  
.....
- sometimes / takes / he / to the park / his children  
.....



## Сравнения



**SIZE:** 6 metres  
**COST:** £3,000  
The speedboat is **big**.  
It is also **expensive**.



**SIZE:** 35 metres  
**COST:** £4,000,000  
The yacht is **bigger than** the speedboat. It is also **more expensive**.



**SIZE:** 80 metres  
**COST:** £30,000,000  
The cruise ship is **the biggest and the most expensive of all**.

- ◆ Прилагательные имеют две степени сравнения: **сравнительную** (comparative) и **превосходную** (superlative).
- ◆ **Сравнительная степень + than** употребляется для сравнения двух людей, предметов и т.п. Например: *Bob is shorter than Paul. My car is more expensive than yours.*
- ◆ **The + превосходная степень + of/in** употребляется для сравнения человека (предмета и т.п.) с людьми (предметами и т.п.), принадлежащими к одной и той же группе. Например: *Rick is the shortest of all.* Когда говорится о местонахождении, употребляется **in**. Например: *Stella is the most beautiful woman in the world.* (A не: ~~of~~ the world)

## Образование степеней сравнения прилагательных

- ◆ Односложные и двусложные прилагательные образуют сравнительную степень путем прибавления **-er**, а превосходную – **-est**. Например: *tall - taller - tallest*
- ◆ Прилагательные, имеющие больше двух слогов, образуют сравнительную степень с помощью **more**, а превосходную – с помощью **most**. Например: *intelligent - more intelligent - most intelligent*
- ◆ Некоторые двусложные прилагательные (*clever, stupid, narrow, gentle, friendly* и т.д.) могут образовывать степени сравнения обоими способами (**-er/-est** и **more/most**).  
Например: *narrow - narrower - narrowest/narrow - more narrow - most narrow*

## Правописание

- ◆ К односложным прилагательным, оканчивающимся на **-e**, прибавляется **-r** в сравнительной степени и **-st** – в превосходной.  
*simple - simpler - simplest*
- ◆ В двусложных прилагательных, оканчивающихся на **-y**, эта буква заменяется на **-i** и прибавляется **-er/-est**.  
*easy - easier - easiest*
- ◆ В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на ударный слог с кратким гласным между двумя согласными, конечная согласная буква удваивается и прибавляется **-er/-est**.  
*fat - fatter - fattest* но *cold - colder - coldest*

11

Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.

1 long	...longer...	...longest...
2 expensive	.....	.....
3 strong	.....	.....
4 difficult	.....	.....
5 intelligent	.....	.....
6 close	.....	.....
7 popular	.....	.....
8 safe	.....	.....
9 important	.....	.....
10 loud	.....	.....
11 weak	.....	.....
12 tasty	.....	.....
13 comfortable	.....	.....
14 delicious	.....	.....



Сравнительная и превосходная степени наречий

Наречия образуют степени сравнения так же, как и прилагательные.

◆ К наречиям, совпадающим по форме с прилагательными, прибавляется **-er** в сравнительной степени и **-est** – в превосходной.

Например:

hard - harder - hardest, early - earlier - earliest

◆ К наречиям, образованным от прилагательных путем прибавления **-ly**, в сравнительной степени добавляется **more**, а в превосходной – **most**. Например:

carefully - more carefully - most carefully

12 Write the comparative and superlative forms of the following adverbs.

- 1 responsibly    *more responsibly*    *most responsibly*
- 2 hard    .....
- 3 fast    .....
- 4 noisily    .....
- 5 early    .....
- 6 satisfactorily    .....

Степени сравнения, образующиеся не по правилам

Прилагательное, Наречие	Сравнительная	Превосходная
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
much/many/ a lot of } little	more	most
far	less	least
	further/farther	furthest/farthest

13 Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.

- 1 an ostrich / an owl (big)  
*An ostrich is bigger than an owl.*
- 2 gold / silver (expensive)  
.....
- 3 Canada / Brazil (cold)  
.....
- 4 feathers / stones (light)  
.....
- 5 a car / a bicycle (fast)  
.....

14 Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.

- 1 Have you read Sheldon's new novel? It's exciting, isn't it?  
*Yes, it's the most exciting novel I've ever read.*
- 2 Have you seen the new Harvey film? It's frightening, isn't it?
- 3 Have you met Mary's cousin? She's beautiful, isn't she?
- 4 Have you tasted my mum's cheesecake? It's delicious, isn't it?
- 5 Have you heard Michael's new record? It's bad, isn't it?

15 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives/ adverbs in brackets.

- A: Excuse me, is there a 1) *...faster...* (fast) way to get to Clovelly?
- B: If you take that road, which is 2) ..... (narrow) than the others, it's only 15 minutes' walk. That's the 3) ..... (quick) way.
- A: Ah, thanks. We've been walking for 35 minutes and we thought we would get there 4) ..... (soon). We can't even see Clovelly yet.
- B: It's hidden by the trees, they're 5) ..... (tall) than the houses. You'll like Clovelly. It's one of the 6) ..... (beautiful) villages in north Devon.
- A: That's what we've heard. It has some of the 7) ..... (pretty) houses, hasn't it?
- B: Yes, and the 8) ..... (tasty) fish you've ever eaten!
- A: Thank you very much for your help. Bye.

16 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adverbs in brackets, adding any necessary words.

- 1 Al swims *...faster than...* you do. (fast)
- 2 My sister drives ..... us all. (carelessly)
- 3 I left the party ..... you did. (late)
- 4 Catherine dances ..... all. (beautifully)
- 5 The leading actress speaks ..... all. (clearly)
- 6 My uncle gives ..... to the poor ..... my father does. (generously)
- 7 Jill Thomas works ..... all. (hard)
- 8 My best friend plays chess ..... I do. (well)



## Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

**17** Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words. Then, answer the questions.

- Which is ...*the coldest*... (cold) planet in our solar system? *Pluto*.
- Is the Gobi desert ..... (large) the Sahara desert?
- Which is ..... (heavy) animal in the world?
- Which is ..... (long) wall in the world?
- Is Mount Everest ..... (high) Kilimanjaro?
- Which is ..... (small) continent in the world?
- Does the cheetah run ..... (fast) the lion?
- Does the blue whale make a ..... (loud) sound ..... the polar bear?
- Which are ..... (tall) buildings in the world?
- Has a falcon got ..... (good) eyesight ..... a human?

## Very – Much

**very** + прилагательное/наречие

Например: It's **very hot** in here.

**much** + сравнительная степень прил./наречия

Например: Today is **much hotter** than yesterday.

**18** Fill in the gaps with *very* or *much*.

- A: This book isn't ...*very*... interesting.  
B: Try reading this one.
- A: That's a beautiful car, isn't it?  
B: Yes, but it's ..... more expensive than anything I can afford.
- A: This jewellery is nice.  
B: Yes, but the necklace is ..... long, isn't it?
- A: I hate geometry, don't you?  
B: Actually, I find geometry ..... more interesting than algebra.
- A: Peter thinks Laura is a ..... polite girl.  
B: I know. Barry does, too.
- A: I want to lose weight, so I've taken up jogging.  
B: That's good, but did you know that aerobics is a ..... more energetic form of exercise than jogging?

**19** Put the adjectives in brackets into the comparative or superlative form adding any necessary words.

- A: What do you think of this dress, Julia?  
B: It's lovely. It's **1** ...*the nicest*... (nice) of all you've tried on yet.  
A: Yes, but I prefer short dresses.  
B: Well, it's true that this dress is **2** ..... (long) the blue one, but it's also **3** ..... (elegant).  
A: Yes, but it's **4** ..... (expensive) dress we've seen so far.  
B: I know. The blue one is much **5** ..... (cheap), but it doesn't look as good as the black one.  
A: Oh! I can't decide. What time is it?  
B: It's only 6 o'clock. We've got plenty of time.  
A: Really! I thought it was **6** ..... (late) that.  
B: Why don't we go to another shop?  
A: No, I've decided. I like the black dress **7** ..... (good). It's **8** ..... (expensive), but it doesn't matter.  
B: OK. Let's go and pay for it.

**20** Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding the *where* necessary.



My sister went on a school trip to a large outdoor swimming pool last week. Early in the morning, all the children got onto a bus with their teacher. It was **1** ...*the smallest*... (small) bus my sister had ever seen, so it was **2** ..... (uncomfortable) journey she'd ever been on. After two hours, they reached their destination. It was **3** ..... (hot) day of the year. When they saw the pool, the children couldn't believe their eyes. It was **4** ..... (big) swimming-pool they had ever seen. There was even a huge water-slide! My sister said it was much **5** ..... (enjoyable) than the rollercoaster at the funfair. Everyone had a fantastic time. When their teacher asked if they had enjoyed the trip, they all agreed that it was much **6** ..... (good) than having lessons at school!



Типы сравнений



The motorbike is **as fast as** the car.  
 The motorbike **isn't as/so comfortable as** the car.  
 The bicycle is **less expensive than** the motorbike.  
 The bicycle is **the least expensive of all**.

◆ Мы употребляем **as + прилагательное + as**, когда хотим сказать, что два человека (предмета и т.п.) обладают одинаковыми качествами. В отрицаниях мы употребляем **not as/so ... as**.

Например: Peter is **as tall as** Tom.  
 Tom is **not as/so strong as** Peter.

◆ Мы употребляем **less + прилагательное + than** для сравнения двух людей (предметов и т.п.).

Например: This book is **less interesting than** that one.

◆ Мы употребляем **the least + прилагательное + of/in** для сравнения трех и более людей (предметов и т.п.).

Например: The film we saw last night was **the least interesting of all I've seen this month**.

21 Complete the sentences to make correct statements about the three means of transport above, as in the example.

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 The car is faster than the bicycle. | 9 ... is the most dangerous of all.  |
| 2 ... is slower than ...              | 10 ... is the cheapest of all.       |
| 3 ... is the slowest of all .         | 11 ... is not as convenient as ...   |
| 4 ... is more expensive than ...      | 12 ... is more comfortable than ...  |
| 5 ... is as fast as ...               | 13 ... is the safest of all.         |
| 6 ... is not as cheap as ...          | 14 ... is the most expensive of all. |
| 7 ... is not as safe as ...           |                                      |
| 8 ... is more dangerous than ...      |                                      |

ДРУГИМИ СЛОВАМИ

Внимательно посмотрите на эти пары предложений. В каждой паре предложения имеют схожий смысл.

- Paul is stronger than Alan.  
**as** Alan is **not as strong as** Paul.
- I have never read such an exciting book.  
**the** It's **the most exciting book** I have ever read.
- The blue car is more expensive than the black one.  
**less** The black car is **less expensive than** the blue one.
- This book has got 160 pages. That book has got 160 pages, too.  
**thick** This book is **as thick as** that one.

22 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- Lisa is prettier than Clare.  
**as** Clare is ... *not as pretty as* ... Lisa.
- It's the biggest house I've ever seen.  
**such** I ..... a big house.
- I've never heard such a beautiful song.  
**the** It's ..... I have ever heard.
- Meat isn't as healthy as vegetables.  
**than** Vegetables are ..... meat.
- Betty is 70 years old. Graham is 70 years old, too.  
**old** Betty is ..... Graham.
- My car is old. Your car is new.  
**than** Your car ..... mine.
- Samantha speaks French better than Josephine.  
**well** Josephine doesn't ..... Samantha does.
- I have never worn such a warm sweater.  
**the** It's ..... I have ever worn.
- This necklace costs £200. That necklace costs £200, too.  
**expensive** This necklace ..... that one.
- Peter is more handsome than Roger.  
**less** Roger is ..... Peter.



## Revision Box

23

Choose the correct answer.

On 2nd September, 1666 a fire (1) ..... in a baker's house in London. It was an accident (2) ..... was the beginning of the (3) ..... fire in London's history. The wind (4) ..... hard, so the fire spread quickly through the city. It burned for three days and (5) ..... a large part of the city, including a cathedral, several churches and thousands of homes. People tried to escape with (6) ..... belongings in boats on the river, as their houses burnt down. Finally, the fire was put out and the rebuilding of London began. A magnificent new cathedral (7) ..... and the people returned to new houses.

- 1 A was started B started C had started  
 2 A which B who C why  
 3 A worse B bad C worst  
 4 A blew B was blowing C had blown  
 5 A destroyed B had destroyed C has destroyed  
 6 A theirs B them C their  
 7 A was built B is built C was being built

24

Rewrite the sentences in the passive.

- 1 Simon gave Rachel a gold ring for her birthday.  
*Rachel was given a gold ring by Simon for her birthday.*  
 2 They are repairing the old bridge at the moment.  
 .....  
 3 Someone had informed the police about the planned robbery.  
 .....  
 4 They will announce the results early tomorrow morning.  
 .....  
 5 Alfred Hitchcock directed the film 'The Birds.'  
 .....  
 6 You must clean your room more often.  
 .....  
 7 Someone was following Clare while she was walking home.  
 .....  
 8 Someone guards the entrance to the embassy twenty-four hours a day.  
 .....

ORAL  
Activity

You have recently visited three different restaurants. Look at the information below and make comparisons, as in the example.



A Roberto's Pizza



B Red Dragon Restaurant



C Regency Restaurant

	A	B	C
large	*	**	***
expensive	*	**	***
healthy	*	***	**
convenient	**	*	***
comfortable	*	**	***

S1: The Red Dragon is larger than Roberto's Pizza.

S2: The Regency Restaurant is the most expensive of all.

WRITING  
Activity

Now, write a report comparing the three restaurants for the next issue of your magazine. Begin like this:

I visited three restaurants this week. The first one I went to was 'Roberto's Pizza' which is more convenient than the Red Dragon, because it is closer to bus stops and train stations. ....  
 .....  
 .....



### Множественное число (The Plural)



Dennis lives on a farm with his parents. What have they got on their farm?  
They've got **one** horse, **four** rabbits, **two** geese, **four** ducks, **two** cockerels, **two** hens and **three** turkeys.

### Правописание

- ◆ Множественное число большей части существительных образуется путем добавления окончания **-s**.  
*one book - three books*
- ◆ К существительным, оканчивающимся на **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -o**, добавляется **-es**.  
*bus - buses, dress - dresses, dish - dishes, peach - peaches, box - boxes, potato - potatoes*  
**Но** некоторые существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-o**, приобретают только **-s**.  
*radio - radios, piano - pianos, studio - studios, video - videos, kilo - kilos, rhino - rhinos*
- ◆ К существительным, оканчивающимся на **гласную + -y**, добавляется **-s**.  
*toy - toys, boy - boys*  
**Но** существительные, оканчивающиеся на **согласную + -y**, теряют **-y** и приобретают **-ies**.  
*cherry - cherries, lady - ladies*

- ◆ Существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-f** или **-fe**, теряют соответственно **-f** или **-fe** и приобретают **-ves**.  
*loaf - loaves, wife - wives*  
**Но** некоторые существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-f** или **-fe**, приобретают только **-s**.  
*roof - roofs, giraffe - giraffes, cliff - cliffs*

### Исключения (Irregular Plurals)

Некоторые существительные образуют форму множественного числа не по приведенным выше правилам. К ним относятся:

child	—	children	goose	—	geese
man	—	men	mouse	—	mice
woman	—	women	sheep	—	sheep
foot	—	feet	ox	—	oxen
tooth	—	teeth	deer	—	deer



**1 Write the plural.**

- |                                 |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 orange ... <i>oranges</i> ... | 9 tall man .....       |
| 2 baby .....                    | 10 roof .....          |
| 3 watch .....                   | 11 radio .....         |
| 4 tomato .....                  | 12 fast car .....      |
| 5 chair .....                   | 13 life .....          |
| 6 key .....                     | 14 party .....         |
| 7 knife .....                   | 15 beautiful day ..... |
| 8 foot .....                    | 16 class .....         |

**Произношение**

Окончания существительных во множественном числе произносятся как:

- ◆ /s/, если они оканчиваются на звуки /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/ или /θ/,  
roofs, ducks, lamps, skirts, myths
- ◆ /ɪz/, если они оканчиваются на звуки /s/, /ks/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /z/ или /ʒ/,  
glasses, boxes, dishes, torches, fridges, noses, mirages
- ◆ /z/, если они оканчиваются на другие звуки.  
girls, dogs, knives, hens, beds

**2 First, say the words in the plural, then, write them in the correct box.**

basket, bush, ferry, cage, key, myth, bus, flower, desk, church, apple, dolphin, chair, hat, baby, dress, skirt, cherry, fox, bag, clock, piano, onion, bird, ball, cliff, box, radio, shirt, rose, dish, roof, song

/s/	<i>baskets,</i>
/ɪz/	<i>bushes,</i>
/z/	<i>ferries,</i>








**3 Put the words in brackets into the plural where necessary.**

- A A: Did you go shopping on Saturday?  
B: Yes, I did. I bought lots of things.  
A: What did you buy?  
B: I bought two (1) ...*scarves*... (scarf) and three (2) ..... (T-shirt).  
A: Did you buy anything else?  
B: Yes. I went to a lovely shop and bought six (3) ..... (cup) and four crystal (4) ..... (glass).  
A: Gosh! You really bought lots of things!  
B: And I also bought two silver (5) ..... (candlestick) for my aunt.
- B A: I went to the zoo yesterday.  
B: Really? Which animals did you see?  
A: Well, first I saw a (1) ..... (lion), and then I saw two (2) ..... (giraffe).  
B: Is that all?  
A: No. I also saw three (3) ..... (deer) and two (4) ..... (rhino).  
B: Did you go to the monkey house?  
A: Yes, and there were three (5) ..... (monkey) there. It was a great day.

**4 Fill in the gaps with the correct number and one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.**

*cucumber, tomato, radish, onion, pepper*

- A: What do you need for the salad?  
B: Well, I need  (1) ...*four peppers*...,  (2) ....., and  (3) .....  
A: Is that all?  
B: Not quite. I also need  (4) ..... and  (5) .....



Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные

◆ **Исчисляемые существительные** (countable nouns) обозначают то, что можно сосчитать. Они имеют формы единственного и множественного числа.

Например: *one book, two books, three books*

◆ Перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе употребляется **a/an**.  
**a + согласный** (/b/, /d/, /g/, /f/, /l/, /p/ и т.д.)  
**an + гласный** (/α/, /e/, /i/, /α/, /N/ и т.д.)



a hat



two hats



an umbrella



two umbrellas

◆ **Неисчисляемые существительные** (uncountable nouns) обозначают то, что нельзя сосчитать. Как правило, они не имеют формы множественного числа. К ним относятся существительные, обозначающие:

**еду:** *cheese, butter, meat, salt, pepper, bacon, bread, chocolate, honey, jam* и т.д.,

**жидкости:** *coffee, milk, water, tea, wine, lemonade, petrol, oil* и т.д.,

**материалы:** *gold, iron, silver, wood, paper* и т.д.,

**отвлеченные понятия:** *beauty, love, happiness* и т.д.,

**другое:** *hair\*, money\*, news\*, snow, furniture, weather, advice\** и т.д.

\* Соответствующие существительные в русском языке – исчисляемые.

◆ Неисчисляемые существительные употребляются с глаголами в форме единственного числа. С этими существительными нельзя употреблять **a/an** или **one**, но можно использовать **some**. **Some** употребляется также с исчисляемыми существительными в форме множественного числа.

Например: *There is some meat in the fridge.*

(A не: *There are some meats in the fridge.*)

*There is some bread on the table.*

(A не: *There is a bread on the table.*)

**some + uncountable noun**

**some + plural countable noun**



some meat  
(A не: ~~a meat~~)



some books













5

Put 'C' for countable and 'U' for uncountable.

- |                   |                |                 |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 coffee ..U..    | 5 carrot ..... | 9 oil .....     |
| 2 book .....      | 6 beauty ..... | 10 jumper ..... |
| 3 furniture ..... | 7 money .....  | 11 friend ..... |
| 4 car .....       | 8 plate .....  | 12 advice ..... |

6

Fill in a, an or some.

1  ..some... cherries	2  ..... telephone	3  ..... lemons
4  ..... bread	5  ..... tea	6  ..... onion
7  ..... apple	8  ..... suitcase	9  ..... biscuits
10  ..... orange juice	11  ..... flowers	12  ..... coins

Для указания количества исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные могут употребляться с такими словами, как **a jar / bottle / piece / loaf / cup / bar / glass / kilo / carton / bowl / can / jug / slice / tin / packet** и т.д. + **of**.

Например: *Don't forget to buy me a jar of olives.*

*They opened ten bottles of champagne.*

7

Choose an appropriate noun + of to indicate quantity.







- some biscuits - four ..... *packets of biscuits* .....
- some bread - three .....
- some tea - two .....
- some soap - two .....
- some pie - three .....
- some meat - two .....
- some sugar - three .....
- some water - six .....



**8** Read the note Julia left for Jack and fill in the gaps with one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.

bottle, tin, jar, carton, packet, can

Jack,  
I'll be late home from work tonight. Can you do the shopping for me? We need:

two 1)  ...cartons... of milk, six 2)  ..... of Coke, a 3)  ..... of pasta, a 4)  ..... of strawberry jam, three 5)  ..... of cat food, and a 6)  ..... of champagne.

It's our wedding anniversary. I hope you haven't forgotten!

Love,  
Julia

## Plural Nouns

◆ **Plural nouns** – это существительные, употребляющиеся только в форме множественного числа. Они обычно обозначают группу людей (вещей и т.п.) и сопровождаются глаголом в форме множественного числа. К таким существительным относятся:

- a) people, police, clothes, stairs и т.д.,  
Например: *There were a lot of people at the party.*  
б) trousers, shorts, shoes, gloves, pyjamas, tights, glasses, earrings, socks, scissors и т.д. (т. е. обозначающие вещи, которые состоят из двух частей).

Например: *Your trousers are in the wardrobe.*

◆ С существительными из пункта б можно употреблять глагол в форме единственного числа (singular verb), если перед ними поставить выражение **a pair of...**

singular verb + a pair of trousers, shorts, gloves, etc.

Сравните: *My shoes are dirty.*  
*There is a pair of shorts on the chair.*

**9** Underline the correct word.

- How many children is/are there in your class?
- Some people never do/does any exercise.
- There is/are a pair of socks under the bed.
- His new clothes was/were very expensive.
- I can't find the stairs in this building. Where is/are they?
- The police is/are looking for the criminal.
- I want to cut some paper. Where is/are the scissors?
- Your hair need/needs cutting.
- Your pyjamas is/are on the bed.
- The information you gave me was/were very helpful.
- There was/were a lot of people at the cinema last night.
- My shorts is/are made of silk.
- His shoes is/are too small. He needs a new pair.
- My parents is/are walking the dog at the moment.
- These earrings was/were given to me by my grandmother.

## One/Ones

Для того, чтобы избежать повторения, мы употребляем вместо существительного в единственном числе местоимение **one**, а во множественном – **ones**.

Например: *I want a dress – a long red one.*

*I don't like big cars. I like small ones.*

**10** Fill in the gaps with one or ones.

- A: Which trousers do you want?  
B: The black ..ones..
- A: I don't like this shirt.  
B: Try on this ..... instead.
- A: Which is your car?  
B: The red .....
- A: These socks are wet.  
B: Put on some dry .....
- A: Your glasses are broken.  
B: I know. I'm going to buy some new .....
- A: Which flowers do you prefer?  
B: I think I prefer the white .....
- A: Can I borrow a pen, please?  
B: I'm sorry, I haven't got .....



# Неопределенный артикль "А" / "An"

Неопределенный артикль a/an употребляется:

- с исчисляемыми существительными в форме единственного числа после глагола **to be**, когда существительное обозначает, кем или чем является лицо (предмет и т.п.), о котором говорят,



She's an actress.



It's a passport.

- с рядом выражений, показывающих, как часто что-то происходит.

Например: We play tennis **once a week**.  
They go on holiday **twice a year**.

Неопределенный артикль a/an не употребляется:

- с неисчисляемыми существительными и исчисляемыми существительными в форме множественного числа. В этом случае вместо a/an можно использовать **some**,



some bread



some eggs

- перед прилагательным, после которого **не следует** существительное. **НО** в противном случае перед прилагательным, начинающимся с согласного звука, **употребляется a**, а перед прилагательным, начинающимся с гласного, – **an**.



It's a hat. It is **green**.  
It is a **green** hat.

11

Fill in the gaps with *a* or *an*.

- |                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 ..... <i>an</i> ..... ancient city | 6 ..... interesting book |
| 2 ..... woman                        | 7 ..... rose             |
| 3 ..... old building                 | 8 ..... August evening   |
| 4 ..... carrot                       | 9 ..... owl              |
| 5 ..... film                         | 10 ..... businessman     |

12

What are the following people's jobs? Look at the pictures and the professions in the list and make sentences, as in the example.

*basketball player, electrician, photographer, mechanic, optician, pilot, painter, typist*

e.g. *Jack is a painter.*

1  Jack	2  Tim	3  Bob
4  Peter	5  Fiona	6  Sarah
7  Rick	8  Annie	

13

Fill in *a*, *an* or *some*.

- A: I bought *some* butter and ..... sugar.  
B: Are you going to make ..... cake?
- A: Would you like ..... apple?  
B: No, thank you.
- A: What did you have for lunch today?  
B: ..... piece of cheese and ..... bread.
- A: I've lost my socks. Have you seen them?  
B: Actually, I found ..... socks on the floor this morning. They must be yours.
- A: I need ..... information for my history project.  
B: Why don't you go to the library?
- A: I'm going to the post office. Do you need anything?  
B: Could you get me ..... stamps and ..... envelope, please?



## Определенный артикль "The"

Определенный артикль **the** употребляется с существительными как в единственном, так и во множественном числе. Например: *the horses, the farm, the man*

### Мы употребляем "the":

- ◆ перед существительными, когда говорим об определенном предмете (объекте) из данного класса. Например, когда упоминаем предмет не в первый раз, либо он уже известен собеседнику по ситуации. Другими словами, когда можно ответить на вопросы "Who?" (Кто именно?) или "Which" (Какой/ая/ое именно? / Который/ая/ое?),



*The elephants in the picture are in a circus. (Which elephants? The elephants we can see in the picture.)*

- ◆ перед существительными, обозначающими уникальные объекты,



*the Colosseum, the earth, the sky, the sun*

- ◆ перед названиями рек (*the Amazon*), морей (*the Baltic Sea*), океанов (*the Pacific*), горных массивов (*the Rocky Mountains*), пустынь (*the Gobi*), групп островов (*the Dodecanese*) и стран, когда название страны включает такие слова как "state", "kingdom" и т.д. (*the United States*), *the Ukraine, the Netherlands*
- ◆ перед названиями музыкальных инструментов в сочетаниях типа *to play the piano, ... the guitar, ... the saxophone*,
- ◆ перед названиями отелей (*the Hilton Hotel*), (кино)театров (*the Apollo Theatre*), кораблей (*the Titanic*), организаций (*the EU*), газет (*The Guardian*), музеев (*the Louvre*),
- ◆ перед словами, обозначающими национальности (*the French*) и фамилии, когда говорим о всем семействе (*the Taylors*),
- ◆ перед титулами, если не указываем имя, *the Queen, the Prince of Wales*,
- ◆ перед существительными *morning, afternoon, evening* в определенных сочетаниях. *He goes to work in the morning.*

### Мы не употребляем "the":

- ◆ с существительными во множественном числе, когда мы говорим о чем-то вообще, то есть, когда не можем ответить на вопросы "Who?" или "Which",



*Elephants live in the jungle. (Which elephants? Elephants is general.)*

- ◆ с именами собственными, *This is Helen.*
- ◆ с названиями стран (*England*), городов (*Paris*), улиц (*Mason Avenue*), парков (*Central Park*), гор (*Everest*), отдельных островов (*Santorini*), озер (*Lake Michigan*) и континентов (*Europe*), *the Hague*
- ◆ с названиями приемов пищи (*breakfast, lunch, dinner* и т.д.), игр, видов спорта (*golf, tennis, basketball* и т.д.). *Golf is a relaxing sport.*
- ◆ если перед существительными стоят *this / that / these / those*, *this bag, those cars* (А не: ~~the~~ *this bag*)
- ◆ с притяжательными местоимениями и с существительными в притяжательном падеже, *That isn't my car — it's Keith's.*
- ◆ с титулами, если указываем имя, *Queen Elizabeth, President Clinton*
- ◆ с существительными *school, church, bed, hospital, prison*, если мы имеем в виду только их предназначение, а не конкретное здание или предмет.
  - Mary goes to school at 8:30 in the morning. (= Mary — ученица.)*  
*Mary's mother went to the school to get Mary's school report. [= Мама Mary была в школе (в здании), она не учится в школе.]*
  - Grandpa is in hospital. (= Он болен, он лечится в больнице.)*  
*Grandma went to the hospital to see Grandpa. [= Бабушка навестила его в больнице (в здании), она не лечится в больнице.]*



Произношение

The произносится как /ðə/ перед словами, начинающимися с согласного звука.

Например: **the** book, **the** phone

The произносится как /ði/ перед словами, начинающимися с гласного звука.

Например: **the** orange, **the** elephant

**14** First, put the nouns in the correct boxes, then, read them out.

key, apple, box, boy, table, octopus, artist, ship, helicopter, umbrella, antenna, spoon, egg, carpet, ant, object

The /ðə/		The /ði/	
...key....	.....	...apple...	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

**15** Fill in the where necessary.

- 1 Have ...*the*... Browns gone on holiday?
- 2 I think this bag is ..... Brenda's.
- 3 The hotel is called ..... Park Hotel.
- 4 Come on, Ben, ..... dinner is ready!
- 5 Let's play ..... football on Saturday.
- 6 I'm going to ..... hospital to visit my aunt.
- 7 ..... new shopping centre was opened by ..... Queen.
- 8 I'm learning to play ..... piano.

**16** Fill in a or the.

At (1) ...*the*... weekend, Roy's parents took him to (2) ..... funfair. They parked their car in (3) ..... big field and then went off to have some fun. Roy bought (4) ..... hot dog and (5) ..... doughnut from (6) ..... stall at (7) ..... entrance to (8) ..... funfair.

Roy went on lots of (9) ..... rides, but his favourite was (10) ..... roller-coaster. It was very scary! They talked to fortune-tellers and they went into rooms full of strange mirrors. They stayed until Roy was exhausted.

That night, Roy dreamed about (11) ..... wonderful time he'd had at (12) ..... fun-fair that day.

**17** Fill in a or the.

- A: Have you made all (1) ...*the*... arrangements for our holiday yet?  
 B: Yes, I think so. I've booked (2) ..... flight to Paris.  
 A: Did you find (3) ..... good hotel?  
 B: Well, it isn't (4) ..... luxurious hotel, but it's near (5) ..... centre of (6) ..... city and each bedroom has (7) ..... private bathroom.  
 A: Good. Did you go to (8) ..... bank to change (9) ..... money into French francs?  
 B: Yes, I've done that. Is there anything else?  
 A: I don't think so. I'll pack (10) ..... suitcases tomorrow night.  
 B: I'll book (11) ..... taxi to take us to (12) ..... airport, so we can leave our car at home.  
 A: Good idea. I think we're going to have (13) ..... very good holiday.

**18** Underline the correct form.

- 1 Thompsons/The Thompsons live on a farm.
- 2 This is my friend, the Melanie/Melanie.
- 3 We went on a tour of Europe/the Europe last summer.
- 4 The President Clinton/President Clinton made an interesting speech.
- 5 John is staying at home/the home tonight.
- 6 The new shopping centre was opened by Mayor/the Mayor.
- 7 The baby sleeps in the afternoon/afternoon.
- 8 That the cat/cat belongs to my sister.
- 9 Do you know how to play violin/the violin?
- 10 The swimming/Swimming is my favourite sport.
- 11 When we went to Rome, we visited Colosseum/the Colosseum.
- 12 They stayed at the Bridgeford/Bridgeford Hotel.

**19** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 We go to the bed at 9 o'clock every night.
- 2 Can you give me some advices, please?
- 3 These trousers is very expensive.
- 4 The police is here.
- 5 Jonathan went to the Brazil on holiday last year.
- 6 There are a lot of sheeps in that field.
- 7 The news about the accident were shocking.
- 8 My car is the red ones which is parked outside.
- 9 Aunt Lucy gave me a pair of glove for my birthday.
- 10 They play golf once the week.



# Revision Box

**20** Choose the correct answer.

- They ...**A**... by 7 o'clock.  
A had already eaten    B were eating    C eat
- I ..... for an hour before he came home.  
A am sleeping    B had been sleeping    C sleep
- You ..... buy some bread.  
A ought    B must    C shall
- The house ..... in 1901. It is very old.  
A is built    B built    C was built
- She is ..... young to stay up late.  
A -    B too    C enough
- I have toothache. I ..... see my dentist soon.  
A mustn't    B need    C must
- I ..... a book when the door bell rang.  
A am reading    B read    C was reading
- That's the man ..... son is a famous actor.  
A whose    B who    C where
- She ..... a new book at the moment..  
A writes    B is writing    C was writing

**21** Look at the pictures and say what each item can't be and what each item must be.

e.g. *It can't be a camel. It must be a lion.*



1 lion or camel?



2 star or starfish?



3 umbrella or coat-hanger?



4 violin or guitar?



5 chair or table?



6 TV or computer?

## ORAL Activity

Simon tidied the attic a few days ago and came across some old objects. Look at the pictures and say what Simon found, using *a, an* or *some*.

e.g. *Simon found an old black telephone.*



1 old black telephone



2 pair of woollen gloves



3 old books



4 hourglass



5 mask



6 green radio



7 old coins



8 old typewriter

## WRITING Activity

Simon is writing a letter to his sister. He is telling her what he found in the attic. Complete the letter.

Dear Emma,

You can't imagine what I found while I was tidying the attic a few days ago.

I found the old black telephone that we used to have in the hall twenty years ago. I also found the pair of woollen gloves which Grandma gave me when I was five. ....



### Some / Any / No



There is **some** cheese. There isn't **any** flour.  
Is there **any** bread? No, there isn't.  
There is **no** bread.



There are **some** potatoes. There aren't **any** eggs.  
Are there **any** bananas? No, there aren't.  
There are **no** bananas.

Употребление "Some / Any / No - A lot of / Much / Many - (A) little / (A) few"

- ◆ **Some, any** и **no** употребляются как с неисчисляемыми существительными (tea, water и т.д.), так и с исчисляемыми существительными (books, trees и т.д.).  
Например: some tea, some books
- ◆ **Some** обычно означает немного или несколько. **Some** используется в **утверждениях**. Например: He's got **some** money. (=У него есть **немного** денег.) She's got **some** books. (= У нее есть **несколько** книг.)
- ◆ **Any** обычно используется в **вопросах**, а **not any** в **отрицаниях**. Например: Have you got **any** coffee? No, I haven't got **any** coffee.
- ◆ В **отрицаниях** можно употреблять **no** вместо **not any**. Например: They haven't got **any** friends. / They've got **no** friends.
- ◆ Мы употребляем **some** в вопросах, когда что-то предлагаем или просим.  
Например: Would you like **some** tea? (offer)  
Can I have **some** water, please? (request)

	Утверждение	Вопрос	Отрицание
Countable nouns	some	any	not any/no
Uncountable nouns	some	any	not any/no

**1** Look at the picture. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.



clouds, traffic, children, snow, trees, ice, houses, fog

e.g. SA: Are there any clouds in the picture?  
SB: No, there aren't.

**2** Fill in the gaps with some, any or no.

- A: I'm very tired. I haven't had (1) ...**any**... sleep.  
B: If I were you, I'd go to bed and get (2) ..... sleep.  
A: I haven't got (3) ..... time. I have to do (4) ..... shopping, because there is (5) ..... food left in the fridge.  
B: Don't worry. I've got (6) ..... free time. I'll go shopping, so you can get (7) ..... rest.



Someone / Something / Somewhere



The woman is **somewhere** in the countryside.  
There is **nobody** with her.  
She isn't carrying **anything** in her hands.

◆ **Someone / somebody** (лицо), **something** (предмет) или **somewhere** (место) используются в утверждениях.

Например: There is **somebody** in the garden.  
He lives **somewhere** near Park Road.

◆ **Anyone / anybody, anything** и **anywhere** обычно используются в вопросах и отрицаниях.

Например: Is there **anything** in your bag?  
There **isn't anything** in my bag.

◆ **No one / nobody, nothing** и **nowhere** могут употребляться вместо **not anyone / anybody, not anything** и **not anywhere** в отрицаниях.

Сравните: There **isn't anybody** in the room.  
There **is nobody** in the room.

	Утверждение	Вопрос	Отрицание
Лицо	someone somebody	anyone anybody	no one / not anyone nobody / not anybody
Предмет	something	anything	nothing / not anything
Место	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere/not anywhere

**Who?** someone/anyone/no one  
somebody/anybody/nobody  
**What?** something/anything/nothing  
**Where?** somewhere/anywhere/nowhere

3 Choose the correct answer.

- Does ...**A**... know where Peter is?  
A anyone B someone C anywhere
- It's very dark in here. I can't see .....  
A any B nothing C anything
- I'm going to buy ..... oranges.  
A no B any C some
- 'Who was at the door?' '.....'  
A No one B Something C Anyone
- There is ..... milk left in the fridge.  
A not B no C any
- I'm bored. There is ..... to do here.  
A something B anything C nothing
- Please can I have ..... water?  
A some B any C no
- There's ..... at the door. Go and open it.  
A somebody B nobody C anybody
- I'm afraid there is ..... tea left.  
A some B any C no
- I must buy ..... for Pam's birthday.  
A nothing B anything C something

Когда мы употребляем **any, anyone/anybody, anything** и **anywhere** в утверждениях, их значение будет другим.

- You can call me **any** time you like.*  
(Не важно когда.)
- Anyone/Anybody** can go to the new sports centre.* (Не важно кто.)
- You can ask me **anything** you want.*  
(Не важно что.)
- We can go **anywhere** you wish.*  
(Не важно куда.)

4 Fill in the gaps with **any, anyone/anybody, anything** or **anywhere**.

- A: What time do you want dinner?  
B: Oh, ...**any**... time you like.
- A: What shall I wear for the party?  
B: Wear ..... you like. It's up to you.
- A: When can we meet for lunch?  
B: Oh, ..... day next week. I haven't made any plans.
- A: Where can I find this magazine?  
B: At ..... shop in the town centre.
- A: Where shall we go for our holidays?  
B: ....., as long as it's hot!
- A: Who can drive the company car?  
B: ..... who has a driver's licence.



Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

◆ **Every** употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.  
 Например: *Every student must come to school on time.*

◆ Местоимения **everyone / everybody / everything** и наречие **everywhere** употребляются в утверждениях, вопросах и отрицаниях. С этими словами употребляются глаголы в форме единственного числа.

Например: *Is everybody/everyone here?*  
 (А не: ~~Are everybody...~~)

*Everything you need is on that desk.*

**5** Fill in the gaps with *every, everyone/everybody/everything* or *everywhere*.

- 1 ...*Every*... person in my family has their own car.
- 2 My uncle knows ..... about gardening.
- 3 Your desk is untidy. There are papers .....
- 4 When I arrived home, ..... had gone out.
- 5 I like walking, so I go ..... on foot.
- 6 My grandmother goes shopping ..... day.

**6** Fill in each gap with a suitable verb from the list in the singular.

*be - know - live - smell - feel*

- 1 It's a beautiful day. Everybody ...*is*... in the garden.
- 2 Everybody I know ..... near my house.
- 3 Everyone ..... the answer to that question. It's easy.
- 4 Everything ..... ready for the party this evening.
- 5 Everyone ..... happy when summer comes.
- 6 Everything ..... delicious!

**7** Fill in the gaps with the derivatives of *some, any* or *every*.

- 1 A: What's the matter, John?  
 B: There's ...*something*... in my shoe, Mum. My foot hurts.
- 2 A: Did ..... see you go into the house?  
 B: I don't think so. The street was empty.
- 3 A: Look at this mess!  
 B: Oh! There are toys .....
- 4 A: Are you going ..... this weekend?  
 B: No, I'm staying at home.
- 5 A: Are you hungry?  
 B: Yes, I want ..... to eat.
- 6 A: Who gave you this book?  
 B: ..... at work.
- 7 A: Is there ..... good on television tonight?  
 B: Not really.

A lot of – Much – Many



*There is a lot of bread in the picture.*  
*Is there much flour? No, there isn't much.*  
*Are there many mushrooms? No, there aren't many.*

◆ **A lot of / lots of** обычно употребляются в утверждениях с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе и с неисчисляемыми существительными. Если после **a lot / lots** нет существительного, то **of** опускается.

Например: *Helen's got a lot of/lots of friends.*  
*There's a lot of sugar in that bowl.*

**No** *Have you got many photos? Yes, I've got a lot.*

◆ **Much** и **many** обычно употребляются в вопросах и отрицаниях. **Much** – с неисчисляемыми существительными, а **many** – с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

Например: *Is there much milk in the fridge? There isn't much tea left. Have you got many friends? I haven't got many friends.*

◆ В вопросах употребляется **how much**, когда имеется в виду количество (amount) чего-то, выражаемого неисчисляемым существительным, и **how many** – когда интересуются числом (number) людей (предметов и т.д.).

**How much** + uncountable noun → amount

**How many** + countable noun → number

Например: *'How much sugar do you take in your tea?' 'Just a spoonful.'* *'How many students are there in your class?' 'There are fifteen.'*

	Утверждение	Вопрос	Отрицание
<b>Countable nouns</b>	a lot (of) lots (of)	(how) many	many
<b>Uncountable nouns</b>	a lot (of) lots (of)	(how) much	much



**8** Fill in the gaps with *how much* or *how many* and then answer the following questions about yourself.

- 1 ...*How many*.. apples do you eat every day? *About three.*
- 2 ..... milk do you drink every day?
- 3 ..... books do you buy every month?
- 4 ..... pocket money do you get every week?
- 5 ..... people did you meet on your last holiday?
- 6 ..... films do you watch every month?
- 7 ..... sugar do you take in your tea?

**9** Fill in *many*, *much* or *a lot of*.

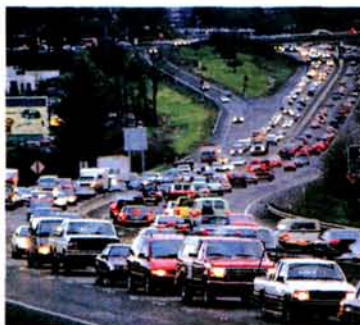
- 1 A: I've got ...*a lot of*... spare time today.  
B: Great! Let's go shopping together.
- 2 A: Are there ..... cinemas in this town?  
B: No, there's only one.
- 3 A: There isn't ..... snow on the ground.  
B: No. The sun has melted it.
- 4 A: There are ..... flowers in the garden.  
B: Yes, they're beautiful, aren't they?
- 5 A: How ..... times did you have a shower yesterday?  
B: Three! It was a very hot day.
- 6 A: I've got ..... things to do today.  
B: I'm busy today, too.
- 7 A: There isn't ..... water in that vase. The flowers will die.  
B: I'll put some more in.
- 8 A: Helen is always alone.  
B: No she isn't. She's got ..... friends.
- 9 A: Are there ..... fish in this river?  
B: No, not any more.
- 10 A: Can you lend me some money?  
B: No, sorry - I haven't got ..... money with me.

**10** Complete the answers with *a lot*, *much* or *many*.

- 1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, .....*a lot*.....'
- 2 'Is there any milk in the fridge?' 'Yes, but not .....
- 3 'Have you got any vegetables?' 'Yes, but not .....
- 4 'How many letters have you typed?' 'Not .....
- 5 'Are there any eggs in the basket?' 'Yes, .....
- 6 'How much salt did you put in the soup?' 'Not .....
- 7 'Did you get any presents for your birthday?'  
'Yes, .....
- 8 'How much did your dress cost?' 'Not .....
- 9 'Are there many children in your class?' 'Yes, .....
- 10 'How much homework do you have each day?'  
'Not .....

## Too many / Too much

◆ **Too many** употребляется с исчисляемыми существительными в форме множественного числа. **Too many** имеет негативный оттенок и показывает, что чего-то слишком много, больше, чем требуется/хотелось бы.



There are **too many cars** on the road. We won't get to the reception on time. (= Из-за того, что на дороге слишком много машин, мы не попадем вовремя на прием.)

◆ **Too much** употребляется аналогично **too many**, но с неисчисляемыми существительными.



She spent **too much money** last month. She can't pay her bills now. (= Она не может оплатить счета из-за того, что потратила слишком много денег в прошлом месяце.)

**11** Fill in the gaps with *too much* or *too many*.

- 1 A: If you eat ...*too much*... chocolate, you'll get fat.  
B: Then I'll only eat a little bit!
- 2 A: You bought ..... oranges at the market yesterday.  
B: Never mind, we can use some for juice.
- 3 A: Don't spend ..... money tonight.  
B: I won't. I want to save some for another day.
- 4 A: There are ..... flowers in that vase.  
B: I know, but I couldn't find another one.
- 5 A: All the students failed the exam.  
B: I know. .... of the questions were difficult.
- 6 A: How did you spoil the soup?  
B: I put ..... salt in it.
- 7 A: I don't like this coffee.  
B: Why not?  
A: There's ..... sugar in it.



A few / few –  
A little / little



Liz has got **a few** apples. She can make an apple pie.



Mary has got **(very) few** apples. She can't make an apple pie.



Tom has got **a little** money. He can go to the restaurant.



Peter has got **(very) little** money. He can't go to the restaurant.

◆ **A few** и **few** употребляются с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе (cars, cassettes и т.д.).

**A few** означает "немного, но достаточно; несколько". Например: *We've got a few oranges. We can make some juice.* (= У нас достаточно апельсинов.)

**Few** означает "совсем мало, почти ни одного" и для усиления часто употребляется с **very**. Например: *There are (very) few biscuits in the box. It is almost empty.* (= Там всего одно или два печенья. Коробка почти пустая.)

◆ **A little** и **little** употребляются с неисчисляемыми существительными (ice, honey, flour и т.д.).

**A little** означает "немного, но достаточно". Например: *She's got a little time. She can go shopping.*

**Little** означает "совсем мало, почти ничего" и для усиления часто употребляется с **very**. Например: *We've got (very) little coffee. There's not enough for all of us.*

12

Use a few or a little for each of the nouns in the list.

e.g. *a few plates*     *a little coffee*

plates, coffee, honey, cars, ice-cream, milk, women, sheep, water, cups, flour, forks, babies, apple juice, pepper, dolls, marmalade, dresses

13

Fill in few, a few, little or a little.

- Shall I make ...*a few*... cakes for tea on Sunday?
- I hope there are ..... people I know at the party.
- Could I have ..... milk in my cup, please?
- The trains are on strike. Very ..... people came to work.
- I hope you've almost finished. There is very ..... time left.
- It's cold. That's why there are very ..... children in the park today.
- Do you need ..... more days to think about my proposal?
- We must go shopping. There's very ..... food in the fridge.
- I'm bored. There's very ..... to do on Wednesday evenings.
- I'm sorry. I'll be ..... late. We've had ..... problems at work.

14

Underline the correct word.

- A: When will you be back?  
B: Soon. I'm only going away for a few/a little days.
- A: How do you like your coffee?  
B: I think you've put **too many/too much** milk in it.
- A: When can I come and visit you?  
B: Come on **every/any** Tuesday. I'm free on that day.
- A: What would you like to eat?  
B: Can I have **some/any** of that cake, please? It looks delicious.
- A: Who's coming to the party?  
B: I've invited **everyone/anyone** from the office.
- A: Do you know **many/much** foreign people?  
B: No. Actually, I know **very few/a few**.
- A: I've lost my keys. I can't find them **anywhere/nowhere**.  
B: Don't worry. I'm sure they're **everywhere/somewhere** in this room.
- A: I asked **everyone/someone**, but **nobody/anybody** wants to help me with my project.  
B: Okay, I'll give you **no/some** help.
- A: Did you buy the biscuits I wanted?  
B: No, they didn't have **any/no** in the supermarket.



**15 Correct the mistakes.**

- 1 Could you lend me any money, please?
- 2 How many time have we got left?
- 3 There aren't too much chocolates in the box.
- 4 I don't know nothing about chemistry.
- 5 I'm looking for anything in the cupboard.
- 6 I want to go nowhere nice and quiet for my holidays.
- 7 I don't need some help with my homework.
- 8 You can have something you want. Just ask for it.
- 9 Did you catch some fish in the river?
- 10 Everybody know that the earth is round.

**Revision Box**

**16 Choose the correct answer.**



The Titanic was a luxurious large passenger ship (1) ...A... everyone thought was unsinkable. It set sail from Southampton, England on (2) ..... first voyage. It (3) ..... to New York, in the USA. (4) ..... were over two thousand people on board the ship for the journey. On April 14th, 1912, the Titanic hit an iceberg and water started (5) ..... into the ship. Nothing (6) ..... be done to stop it and so, eventually, at 2.20 am on April 15th, the ship (7) ..... into the icy water. About 1,500 people died on that terrible night. On September 1st, 1985, experts (8) ..... the wreck of the Titanic on the ocean floor.

- |                    |                   |              |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1 A which          | B it              | C who        |
| 2 A it             | B its             | C it's       |
| 3 A went           | B had gone        | C was going  |
| 4 A There          | B They            | C These      |
| 5 A to flow        | B flow            | C flows      |
| 6 A can            | B could           | C couldn't   |
| 7 A sunk           | B sank            | C had sunk   |
| 8 A had discovered | B have discovered | C discovered |

**ORAL Activity**

You are going camping by the sea with a friend. Look at the items in the box and decide which you need to take with you and which you don't. Then, make sentences using *some* or *any*, as in the example.

e.g. S1: We needn't take **any** tools.

S2: We must take **some** string.



**WRITING Activity**

You're writing a letter to another friend who would like to go camping by the sea. Using your notes from the Oral Activity, tell them what they must and needn't take. Begin like this:

Dear ....., (your friend's name)

I was happy to hear that you want to go camping too. I hope you have given it a lot of thought, because it's not going to be easy. There are some things you must take with you. First of all, you must take some .....  
 .....but you needn't take any .....  
 .....



### Общие вопросы



- A: **Have you been here before?**  
 B: **No, I haven't.**  
 A: **Do you think we'll catch many fish?**  
 B: **Yes, I do. It looks like a good spot.**

◆ Общие вопросы ('yes/no'-questions) предполагают ответы "Да" или "Нет". Обычно они начинаются со **вспомогательного** (auxiliary) или **модального глагола** (modal), за которым следует подлежащее (subject). В ответах на такие вопросы обычно используются **Yes** или **No**.

Например: **Are you writing a letter? Yes, I am.**  
**Can you play the piano? No, I can't.**

◆ Когда смысловой глагол стоит в present simple, вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do** или **does**.

Например: **Does Jack live in a flat? Yes, he does.**

Когда смысловой глагол стоит в past simple, вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did**.

Например: **Did it rain last night? No, it didn't.**

### 1 Make questions, as in the example.

- I have got black hair. (you)  
*Have you got black hair, too?*
- I can swim. (he)
- I like playing tennis. (Sharon)
- I read a book last week. (Mike)
- I have bought a new car. (Anne)
- I am wearing a red dress. (you)

### 2

Fill in the gaps with the correct auxiliary or modal verb.

- A: *...is...* John coming home tomorrow?  
B: No, he isn't.
- A: ..... your father own a car?  
B: Yes, he does.
- A: ..... you got a pair of gloves?  
B: No, I haven't.
- A: ..... they speak French?  
B: Yes, they can.
- A: ..... you been waiting long?  
B: No, I haven't.
- A: ..... the children enjoy the play?  
B: Yes, they did.

### 3

Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- Jonathan / when / could / he / swim / three / was?  
*Could Jonathan swim when he was three?*
- you / this / tomorrow / will / finish?  
.....
- eggs / buy / you / some / to / did / remember?  
.....
- has / house / yet / George / moved?  
.....
- help / clean / me / can / the / you / kitchen?  
.....

### 4

Tony and Erica are at a party. They have just been introduced. Read the dialogue and fill in the gaps with the correct auxiliary or modal verb.

- T: *...Do...* you know Mary well?  
 E: Yes, we work together.  
 T: ..... you enjoying the party?  
 E: Yes, there are lots of people here.  
 T: ..... I get you a drink?  
 E: No, thank you. I'm not thirsty.  
 T: ..... you know everyone here?  
 E: No, only Mary. She invited me.





## Отрицательная форма общих вопросов

- A: **Don't you think** he looks like me?  
 B: Yes, I think he does.  
 A: **Isn't he quiet?**  
 B: Yes, he *doesn't* cry very much.



- ◆ **Отрицательная форма общих вопросов (negative questions)** образуется с помощью **not**, причем порядок слов в полной (full form) и краткой формах (short form) различен.

**Full form: auxiliary + subject + not + verb**  
 Например: *Do you not want to watch that film?*  
**Short form: auxiliary + n't + subject + verb**  
 Например: *Don't you want to watch that film?*

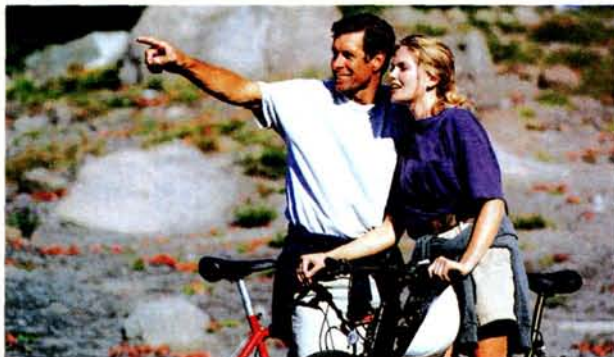
- ◆ Мы употребляем отрицательную форму в разговорной речи: а) когда хотим услышать подтверждение, (например: *Didn't you see James yesterday?*) и б) для выражения:

- удивления,  
 Например: *Can't you ride a bicycle?*
- восхищения,  
 Например: *Doesn't he speak English well!*
- раздражения, досады.  
 Например: *Can't you stop talking?*

### 5 Write the short form of the following negative questions.

- Have I not told you to be careful with the knife?  
*Haven't I told you to be careful with the knife?*
- Do you not know what the capital of Italy is?  
 .....
- Do you not find him handsome?  
 .....
- Have you not ever swum in the sea?  
 .....
- Can you not keep quiet while I'm on the phone?  
 .....
- Did they not know that the meeting was cancelled?  
 .....
- Have you not paid the bill yet?  
 .....
- Are you not taking the children with you?  
 .....

## Специальные вопросы



- A: Look at that.  
 B: **What is it?**  
 A: I think it's a castle.  
 B: **How can we get there?**  
 A: I don't know. There must be a path.

**Специальные вопросы (wh- questions)** начинаются с вопросительного слова (question word) **who, what, where, when** и т.д. Вспомогательный или модальный глагол ставится перед подлежащим.

### question word + auxiliary/modal + subject

- people: who/whose**  
 e.g. *'Who did you ask for help?' 'My sister.'*  
*'Whose is that umbrella?' 'It's Kate's.'*
- things: what/which**  
 e.g. *'What do you need?' 'A pencil.'*  
*'Which bag does Helen like?' 'The black one.'*
- place: where**  
 e.g. *'Where did Father go?' 'To the market.'*
- time: when/how long (ago)/how often**  
 e.g. *'When did Peter sign the contract?' 'Yesterday.'*  
*'How long have they been married?' 'Three years.'*  
*'How long ago did you get your degree?' 'Four years ago.'*  
*'How often does Annette travel abroad?' 'Once a month.'*
- quantity/number: how much/how many**  
 e.g. *'How much money have you got?' 'Very little.'*  
*'How many books did you buy?' 'Two.'*
- manner: how**  
 e.g. *'How did Tom come home?' 'By bus.'*
- reason: why**  
 e.g. *'Why does Sharon want to leave?' 'She's bored.'*
- age: how old**  
 e.g. *'How old is your brother?' 'Thirty-two.'*
- distance: how far**  
 e.g. *'How far is it to the cinema?' 'About ten minutes' walk.'*



# What-Which-How



**What stories do you like?**



**Which dress shall I buy?**

◆ **What + noun/auxiliary/modal**

Мы обычно употребляем эту структуру, когда спрашиваем о чем-то, что имеет неограниченный выбор.

Например: **What films do you like?** (Существует неограниченный выбор фильмов: вестерн, комедии, приключенческие и т.д.)

**What can I get you?**

◆ **Which + noun/auxiliary/one/ones**

Мы употребляем эту структуру, когда спрашиваем о ком-то / чем-то с ограниченным выбором.

Например: **Which author do you like best — Agatha Christie or Ian Fleming?** (Ограниченный выбор, поскольку выбираем одного из двух авторов.)

**Which would you prefer to buy - a car or a bike?**

**'Which one did you buy?' 'Neither.'**

◆ **How + adjective/adverb/much/many/auxiliary**

Мы употребляем эту структуру, когда интересуемся числом, количеством или хотим узнать, каким образом (как) происходит что-то.

Например: **'How tall is he?' 'About 1.70m.'**

**'How fast can you run?' 'Not very fast.'**

**'How much money did you spend?' 'A lot.'**

**'How many sisters have you got?' 'Two.'**

**'How do you get to work?' 'By bus.'**

**6**

**Fill in the gaps with what or which.**

- A: ...*What*... countries have you been to so far?  
B: I've been to France, Spain and Portugal.  
A: ..... would you like to visit again some day?  
B: Um, Spain, I think.
- A: I've got three red blouses. .... do you like best?

- B: The one with the white collar.
- A: ..... can I do for you?  
B: I'd like some chocolates, please.  
A: ..... ones?  
B: Those in the red box, please.
- A: ..... are you looking for?  
B: My shoes. Have you seen them?  
A: ..... pair do you mean?  
B: My new blue suede ones.
- A: ..... do you like doing in your free time?  
B: I like reading Agatha Christie's novels.  
A: ..... is your favourite?  
B: 'Murder on the Orient Express.'

**7**

**Fill in the gaps with how or what.**

- .....*How*..... old are your grandparents?
- ..... number did you dial?
- ..... can I get you to drink?
- ..... are you?
- ..... many people were at the wedding?
- ..... can I do to help you?
- ..... colour hair has Jane got?
- ..... long is she going to stay here?

**8**

**Fill in the gaps with many, much, far, often or long.**

- A: How ...*far*... is it from your house to the airport?  
B: About an hour's drive.
- A: How ..... did you stay in the US?  
B: Not very long, a couple of weeks.
- A: How ..... do you go shopping?  
B: Every Saturday morning.
- A: How ..... people have you invited to the party?  
B: Just a few.
- A: How ..... sugar did you put in my coffee?  
B: Not much. Why?  
A: It's too bitter.
- A: How ..... is it from the capital to the border?  
B: About a day's journey, I'd say.
- A: How ..... times have I asked you to knock before coming into my office?  
B: I'm sorry. I won't do it again.
- A: How ..... does your husband take you out to dinner?  
B: Only once a year — on our anniversary!  
A: Oh!
- A: How ..... will I have to wait before the doctor can see me?  
B: He'll be with you in a few minutes.



9

Fill in the gaps with the correct question word(s). Then, choose the correct answer to each question.



HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT SWITZERLAND?

- 1 ...*Where*... is Switzerland?  
 A In eastern Europe.  
 B In central Europe.  
 C In northern Europe.
- 2 ..... is the capital of Switzerland \_\_\_\_\_  
 A Bern      B Zürich or C Geneva?
- 3 ..... countries surround Switzerland \_\_\_\_\_  
 A France, Italy, Austria and Germany,  
 B France, Germany and Austria, or  
 C France, Italy, Austria, Germany and Lichtenstein?
- 4 ..... was Johanna Spyri?  
 A A Swiss inventor who designed the first watch.  
 B A Swiss writer who wrote 'Heidi.'  
 C A Swiss skier who won four Olympic medals.
- 5 ..... official languages are spoken in Switzerland?  
 A Two      B Three      C Four

10

Fill in *who, whose, what, which, where, when, how long, how often, what time, why, how much or how many.*

- 1 '...*When*... did you move house?' 'Last month.'
- 2 '..... do you go to bed?' 'At 11 o'clock.'
- 3 '..... bag is this?' 'Tara's.'
- 4 '..... dogs have you got?' 'Three.'
- 5 '..... didn't she phone?' 'Because she forgot.'
- 6 '..... is your cup?' 'The white one.'
- 7 '..... did you eat for breakfast?' 'Toast.'
- 8 '..... do you go swimming?' 'Twice a week.'
- 9 '..... did your jumper cost?' '£32.'
- 10 '..... did you live in Germany?' 'Ten years.'
- 11 '..... do you live?' 'Next to the school.'
- 12 '..... did you phone this morning?' 'Uncle John.'

11

Fill in *what, how long, when, how, how much, how many, why or where.*

- Travel Agent: Good morning, sir. 1) ...*What*... can I do for you?  
 Customer: I'd like to go on holiday.  
 Travel Agent: Certainly. 2) ..... do you want to go?  
 Customer: I'd like to go somewhere hot and sunny.  
 Travel Agent: 3) ..... do you want to go for?  
 Customer: Two weeks.  
 Travel Agent: 4) ..... do you want to leave?  
 Customer: On 2nd August.  
 Travel Agent: 5) ..... people will be going?  
 Customer: Four people.  
 Travel Agent: Good. I suggest two weeks in the south of France.  
 Customer: 6) ..... will it cost?  
 Travel Agent: Two hundred pounds per person.  
 Customer: 7) ..... will we get there?  
 Travel Agent: By plane. 8) ..... do you ask?  
 Customer: Because I hate travelling by boat.

12

Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- 1 *Did you feed the baby?*  
 Yes, I fed him an hour ago.
- 2 .....  
 Jane buys new clothes **twice a year**.
- 3 .....  
 This is **Michael's** desk.
- 4 .....  
**No**, I'm not going to his party.
- 5 .....  
 It's only **a ten-minute walk** from my house to the cinema.
- 6 .....  
 I started work **on Monday**.
- 7 .....  
 I go to bed **at 11 o'clock**.
- 8 .....  
 I closed the door **because I was cold**.
- 9 .....  
**No**, I didn't go shopping yesterday.
- 10 .....  
 My sunglasses cost **£45**.
- 11 .....  
**Fifty** people were invited to Helen's wedding.
- 12 .....  
 Jonathan works in **a bank**.



Вопросы к подлежащему  
и дополнению

◆ **Вопросы к подлежащему** (subject questions) – это вопросы, в которых мы спрашиваем, кто или что выполняет действие, то есть нас интересует подлежащее. Такие вопросы обычно начинаются со слов **who, what** или **which**. Глагол употребляется в утвердительной форме.

Например: **Who sent you this postcard?**

(A не: ~~Who did send you this postcard?~~)

**What happened while I was away?**

(A не: ~~What did happen while I was away?~~)

subject	verb	object
Mary	loves	Tom.
Who	loves	Tom?

◆ **Вопросы к дополнению** (object questions) – это вопросы, в которых мы интересуемся дополнением. Они также начинаются со слов **who, what** или **which**, но глагол употребляется в вопросительной форме.

Например: **Who did you meet at the theatre?**

**What do you have to tell me?**

subject	verb	object
Mary	loves	Tom.
Who	does Mary love?	

**13** Choose the correct answer.

- Who spoke to Paul? ..... **B** .....  
A Paul spoke to Mary.  
B Mary spoke to Paul.
- What did Helen give you? .....  
A Helen gave me a book.  
B I gave Helen a book.
- Who invited Sheila to the party? .....  
A Sheila invited Bob to the party.  
B Bob invited Sheila to the party.
- Who was Jane looking for? .....  
A Jane was looking for Peter.  
B Peter was looking for Jane.
- What was in the box? .....  
A The dress was in the box.  
B The box was in the dress.
- Who likes children? .....  
A I like children.  
B Children like me.

**14** Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- Who works with Ken?**  
Larry works with Ken.
- .....  
Paul met **George**.
- .....  
James is seeing **the doctor** tomorrow.
- .....  
**Peter** has found a new job.
- .....  
Mum is **cooking lunch**.
- .....  
**Sarah** phoned Richard.
- .....  
She is reading **a book**.
- .....  
They welcomed **the President**.
- .....  
**Nicola** went on holiday with Joanne.
- .....  
They are building **a house**.
- .....  
Helen likes **Ron**.
- .....  
**Jenny** lives with Bill.

Если глагол употребляется с предлогом, то в вопросах к дополнению предлог ставится в конце вопроса. Например:  
*Who shall I give it to? What is Bill waiting for?*

**15** Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

- Who did you get a message from?**  
I got a message from **Jack**.
- .....  
Linda is talking to **Paul**.
- .....  
He's looking at **some old photos**.
- .....  
Sandra bought a present for **her parents**.
- .....  
Paul comes from **Britain**.
- .....  
The children went to the park with **their nanny**.
- .....  
She borrowed this dress from **Ann**.
- .....  
Tim is looking for **his pen**.



## Мини-вопросы (Question Tags)

- ◆ **Мини-вопросы** – это краткие вопросы в конце высказываний\*. Мы обычно употребляем их в устной речи, когда ожидаем, что с нами согласятся, либо когда хотим проверить справедливость нашего мнения.



They're binoculars,  
aren't they?

She has got a  
lot of bags,  
hasn't she?



Cows don't eat  
meat, do they?

- ◆ Мини-вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного или модального глагола и соответствующего личного местоимения.

Например: *Don is leaving tomorrow, isn't he?*  
*Tina can't knit, can she?*

- ◆ Если глагол в предложении стоит в present simple, мини-вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do / does** и личного местоимения. Если глагол стоит в past simple, мини-вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола **did** и личного местоимения.
- Например: *Sharon doesn't like dancing, does she?*  
*They paid the bill, didn't they?*

- ◆ Если высказывание утвердительное, то мини-вопрос, как правило, отрицательный.  
Например: *He robbed the bank, didn't he?*
- ◆ Если высказывание отрицательное, то мини-вопрос, как правило, утвердительный.  
Например: *She won't leave without us, will she?*
- ◆ Если высказывание содержит слово с отрицательным значением (**never, hardly, seldom** или **rarely**), то мини-вопрос утвердительный.  
Например: *She hardly goes anywhere, does she?*
- ◆ С некоторыми глаголами и выражениями мини-вопросы строятся иначе. Обратите внимание на приведенные примеры.

I am → aren't I?

I am tall, aren't I?

Повелительное → will/won't you?

Stop talking, will/won't you?

Don't → will you?

Don't move, will you?

Let's → shall we?

Let's sit here, shall we?

I have (got) → haven't I?  
(=иметь)

He has got a car, hasn't he?

I have → don't I?  
(другое значение)

You have a big breakfast every day, don't you?

There is/are → isn't/aren't there?

There is a woman in the room, isn't there?

This/That is → isn't it?

This is Tom's coat, isn't it?

\* Все предложение – высказывание плюс мини-вопрос – называется разделительным (расчлененным) вопросом (tag question).

## Интонация

- ◆ Мы понижаем интонацию в мини-вопросе, когда уверены в ответе и ожидаем, что с нами согласятся.



Например:  
*These are penguins, aren't they?*



- ◆ Мы повышаем интонацию в мини-вопросе, когда не уверены в ответе и хотим что-либо узнать.



Например:  
*He isn't working at the moment, is he?*





**16** Underline the correct answer.

- 1 A: You're going on holiday soon, aren't you/are you?  
 B: Yes, I am. You've been to Spain before, have you/haven't you?  
 A: Yes. It was great. You'll enjoy it. You'll send me a postcard, will you/won't you?  
 B: Of course!  
 2 A: Your brother has got a dog, hasn't he/has he?  
 B: Yes, he has. You don't want a puppy, do you/don't you?  
 A: Well, actually I do. You haven't got any, haven't you/have you?  
 B: Yes, you can have one if you want.  
 3 A: Tom bought you these flowers, didn't he/did he?  
 B: Yes, he did. They're beautiful, are they/aren't they?

**17** Fill in the correct question tag.

- 1 You don't like cheese, ...do you.....?  
 2 She is tired, .....?  
 3 We have got enough money, .....?  
 4 He doesn't live with his parents, .....?  
 5 They haven't got a dog, .....?  
 6 He likes eggs, .....?  
 7 She isn't a teacher, .....?  
 8 They are married, .....?  
 9 We aren't late, .....?  
 10 Paul can swim, .....?  
 11 That jacket isn't too small, .....?  
 12 Bessie did her homework, .....?  
 13 I am early, .....?  
 14 You didn't eat all of it, .....?

**18** Fill in the correct question tags and short answers.

- 1 'Patrick is a soldier, ...isn't he...?' 'Yes, ...he is...'  
 2 'She has broken her leg, .....?' 'Yes, unfortunately .....'  
 3 'He's very rich, .....?' 'Yes, that's right, .....'  
 4 'He doesn't draw very well, .....?'  
 'No, .....'  
 5 'They often go on holiday, .....?'  
 'Yes, .....'  
 6 'You've been to Egypt, .....?'  
 'Yes, .....'

- 7 'You live in England, .....?'  
 'No, ..... I live in Scotland.'  
 8 'He's having lunch now, .....?'  
 'No, ..... He's in a meeting.'  
 9 'Penny lives with Ruby, .....?'  
 'Yes, .....'  
 10 'The bathroom is at the end of the hall, .....?'  
 'No, ..... It's at the top of the stairs.'  
 11 'You and Martin have the same birthday, .....?'  
 'Yes, .....'  
 12 'She wears glasses, .....?'  
 'Yes, .....'

**19** Fill in the question tags and then read the sentences aloud with the correct intonation.

sure	not sure	
✓		1 You'll phone me, <u>won't you</u> ?
	✓	2 She goes to bed early, .....?
	✓	3 He didn't use to live alone, .....?
	✓	4 We aren't going home yet, .....?
✓		5 He plays well, .....?
✓		6 She's very tidy, .....?
	✓	7 Alan went home, .....?
✓		8 They have got two daughters, .....?
	✓	9 Andrea's very beautiful, .....?
✓		10 Ted will cook dinner, .....?

**20** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Did she returned from her trip to Paris?  
 2 What one do you like best?  
 3 Who did phone last night?  
 4 Did not they enjoy their journey?  
 5 You never drive at night, don't you?  
 6 Let's go shopping, will we?  
 7 There are lots of flowers, aren't they?  
 8 Do he know the answer?  
 9 Who are you going?  
 10 Who do you with live?



# Revision Box

## 21 Turn from direct into reported speech.

- Sandra said to him, 'I have arranged everything for the wedding.'  
*Sandra told him that she had arranged everything for the wedding.*
- He said to me, 'Can you give me directions to the post office, please?'
- The boy said, 'I'm going to the park today.'
- Father said to me, 'I'll tidy the garden tomorrow.'
- 'Turn off the light, please,' John said to me.

## 22 Choose the correct answer.

- She told me ...**B**... home.  
A go                    B to go                    C going
- If we ..... now, we will reach the airport in an hour.  
A leave                B will leave            C are leaving
- I wish she ..... talking in class.  
A is stopping        B has stopped        C would stop
- Susan told me she ..... the following morning.  
A left                    B would leave        C will leave
- This is the house ..... I was born.  
A when                B that                    C where
- ..... money did you save last year?  
A How much        B How many        C How long
- This is my ..... car.  
A mother's            B mothers'            C mothers
- Dinner ....., yet.  
A is served                    B has been served  
C hasn't been served
- Help me carry these bags, .....?  
A wouldn't you    B will you            C don't you
- My hair was wet. I ..... in the rain.  
A had been walking    B had walking  
C have been walking

## ORAL Activity

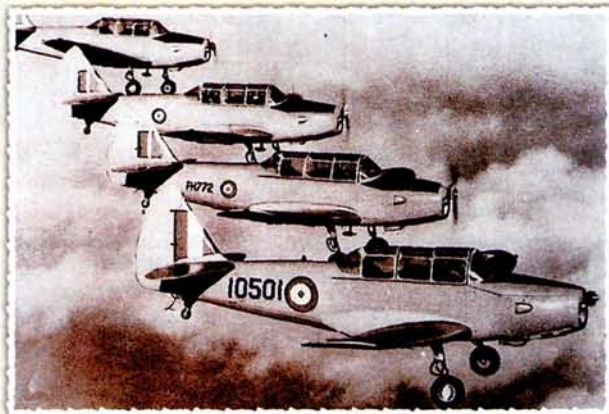
Use the question words from the list and the prompts below to ask and answer questions, as in the example.

how many, when, who, where, how, how long, which

e.g. SA: *When did it start?*

SB: *It started in 1939.*

### HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT THE SECOND WORLD WAR?



- it / start? In 1939.
- it / last? Six years.
- countries / be involved? Almost every country in the world.
- be / British Prime Minister? Sir Winston Churchill.
- most of the battles / take place? In Europe.
- people / be killed? More than forty million people.
- it / end? The Americans dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

## WRITING Activity

Imagine that one of your relatives fought during the Second World War. Write the questions you want to ask him.

.....

.....

.....

.....

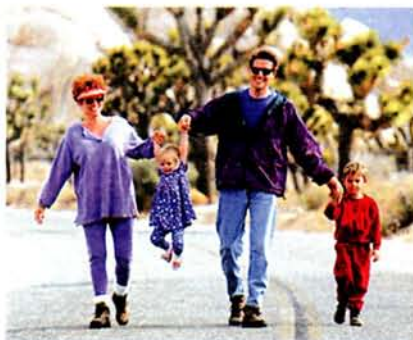
.....

.....

.....



### Предлоги времени



They go for long walks **at** the weekend.



Flowers look lovely **in** spring.



Sharon has ballet lessons **on** Wednesdays and Fridays.

Предлоги времени используются для указания времени действия. Чаще всего употребляются **at, in** и **on**.

Например: He wakes up **at** seven o'clock **in** the morning.

AT		IN		ON			
время:	at 4 o'clock	месяцы:	in April, in June и т.д.	дни:	Friday, on New Year's Day		
праздники:	at Christmas at Easter	времена года:	in (the) winter/spring/ autumn и т.д.	даты:	on July 4th		
в выражениях:	at the weekend	годы:	in 1994, in 1998 и т.д.	части суток	on Monday evening		
	at the moment	века:	in the 20th century				
	at present	в выражениях:	in the morning/ afternoon/evening	конкретного дня:	evening		
	at dawn		in an hour/in a minute				
	at noon		in a week/few days/ month/year			прилагательное + day:	on a cold day
	at night						
at midnight							

#### ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ

- From ... to** употребляется для указания временных рамок.  
Например: He goes to school **from** Monday **to** Friday. She works **from** 9 **to** 5 every day.
- Предлоги времени не употребляются:
  - со словами **today, tomorrow, tonight** и **yesterday**,  
Например: I saw him **yesterday evening**.
  - перед словами **this, last, next, every, all, some, each, one** и **any**.  
Например: You can visit me **any** Sunday.

**1** First, fill in the gaps with the correct preposition, then answer the questions.

- What time do you get up ...*in*... the morning?  
*I usually get up at half past seven.*
- What do you like doing ..... the weekend?
- Where do you usually go ..... Easter?
- What do you usually do ..... Friday evenings?
- What do you wear ..... a cold winter day?
- What are you doing ..... the moment?
- What time do you go to bed ..... night?
- Did you go on holiday ..... July?
- Do you eat lunch ..... noon?
- What do you usually do ..... Christmas Day?



# Prepositions - Linking Words

## 2 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- A: What time shall we meet?  
B: Let's meet ...**at**... 8 o'clock.
- A: When is the next meeting?  
B: It's ..... Wednesday, next week.
- A: What time do you want to have your appointment?  
B: Oh, any time ..... the morning.
- A: They got married ..... 1992, you know.  
B: Really? I thought it was 1991.
- A: Do you go to bed early?  
B: No, I usually go to bed ..... midnight.
- A: What time shall we have lunch?  
B: I'd like to eat ..... noon, if that's all right.
- A: When are you going shopping?  
B: Probably ..... the weekend.
- A: When was her baby born?  
B: ..... July 27th.
- A: I love summer holidays.  
B: I prefer to go on holiday ..... winter.
- A: When is your next exam?  
B: ..... Tuesday afternoon.

## 3 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.



- A: Hello Hannah. I hear you're married now.  
B: That's right. I got married last year, 1) ...**at**... Easter.  
A: Congratulations! And when did you have your baby?  
B: 2) ..... Christmas. Actually, he was born  
3) ..... Christmas Day.  
A: Well, I'm getting married 4) ..... the summer.  
Will you come to the wedding?  
B: Of course. When exactly is it?  
A: It's 5) ..... July 31st. It will be at the village church in Sunnyside.  
B: Oh, that's lovely. Listen, can we meet for coffee next week?  
A: I go to the gym 6) ..... Wednesdays, but I don't do anything 7) ..... Friday mornings.  
B: Great! I'll meet you 8) ..... eleven o'clock in the new café on the High Street.  
A: Okay. See you 9) ..... Friday, then.









## 4 Choose the correct answer.

- My birthday is ...**on**... November 10th.  
A at                    B on                    C in
- Let's go swimming ..... tomorrow afternoon.  
A at                    B on                    C —
- Farmers usually get up ..... dawn.  
A in                    B at                    C on
- We went to Spain ..... last summer.  
A at                    B —                    C on
- We always buy chocolate eggs ..... Easter.  
A in                    B at                    C on
- My parents are moving house ..... May.  
A in                    B on                    C at
- The plane leaves ..... twenty minutes.  
A at                    B in                    C on
- The last train to London leaves ..... midnight.  
A in                    B at                    C on

## 5 How good is your knowledge of history? Look at the pictures and the list of answers given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| August 5th, 1962   | 1876             |
| 5th century BC     | 16th century     |
| 1492               | July 20th, 1969  |
| January 27th, 1756 | March 10th, 1922 |

e.g. SA: When was America discovered?  
SB: It was discovered in 1492.

1 	2 	3 
When was America discovered?	When was Gandhi first put in prison?	When was the Acropolis built?
4 	5 	6 
When was the Mona Lisa painted?	When was the telephone invented?	When was Mozart invented?
7 	8 	
When did Marilyn Monroe die?	When did Neil Armstrong land on the moon?	



## Предлоги места

Предлоги места употребляются для указания местонахождения. К ним относятся: **on**, **under**, **in front of**, **behind**, **beside/next to**, **near**, **at**, **in**, **between**, **among** и **opposite**. Предлог **between** указывает на место между двумя объектами (одушевленными или неодушевленными). Предлог **among** указывает на место *среди* трех или более объектов.



- 1 The man is standing **near** the woman.
- 2 The ball is **under** the chair.
- 3 The sponge is **beside/next to** the bucket.
- 4 The plates are **on** the table.
- 5 The yellow shell is **in front of** the orange shell.  
The orange shell is **behind** the yellow one.
- 6 Chang is standing **among** his friends.
- 7 She is sitting **at** her desk.
- 8 The big jar is **between** the two small ones.
- 9 The goldfish is **in** the bowl.
- 10 They're standing **opposite** each other.

Мы употребляем **at**

- ◆ в выражениях:  
at school/university/college, at work, at home, at the top of ..., at the bottom of ...,
- ◆ с адресами, когда указываем номер дома.  
at 15 Rose Street **НО** in Rose Street

Мы употребляем **in**

- ◆ в выражениях:  
in the middle, in the air, in the sky, in bed, in hospital, in prison, in a newspaper/magazine/book, in a picture, in a street, in the world,
- ◆ с названиями городов, стран и континентов.  
in Paris, in Turkey, in Europe, in Africa

Мы употребляем **on**

- ◆ в выражениях:  
on the left, on the right  
on the first/second и т.д. floor,  
on a chair **НО** in an armchair

## 6

## Underline the correct word(s).

- 1 There is a nice picture of our town on/at/in this magazine.
- 2 The dog is hiding in/under/on the chair.
- 3 Let's go shopping in/at/opposite Oxford Street.
- 4 Read the note at/under/in the bottom of the page.
- 5 The Jacksons live at/in/on the second floor.
- 6 John is in/near/behind bed at the moment. He's not feeling very well.
- 7 The bakery is at/opposite/on the park.
- 8 Grandmother loves sitting on/at/in her favourite armchair by the fire.
- 9 Sarah sits under/beside/in me at school.
- 10 There is a playground at/under/near the bank.
- 11 Look at the stars between/in/at the sky.
- 12 My house is between/on/among the bank and the post office.
- 13 After the party, there was rubbish in/at/on the floor.
- 14 Let's meet on/between/at the theatre.
- 15 There's a very interesting article about UFOs in/on/at the newspaper today.



Prepositions - Linking Words

**7** Fill in the gaps with *at, on, in, behind* or *next to*. Some of them can be used more than once.



This is Mrs Jacobs. She's a teacher. This is her classroom. There are some shelves (1) *on* the wall. There are lots of books (2) *on* the shelves. There are some tables (3) *in* the classroom. Some children are sitting (4) *at* a table. (5) *on* the table there is a small basket. The children keep their crayons and pencils (6) *in* this basket. Mrs Jacobs is standing (7) *by* the table, (8) *near* John. John is standing up, but the other children are sitting (9) *at* their chairs.

**8** Fill in the gaps with an appropriate preposition.

- 1 A: Where are my keys?  
B: Probably *in* your pocket.
- 2 A: I like to sit *at* the window on planes.  
B: So do I. I like to see the clouds.
- 3 A: Where shall I put the cups?  
B: *on* the table, please.
- 4 A: Where is the cat? I can't see it.  
B: It's *under* the table.
- 5 A: Where is your house?  
B: It's *near* the supermarket and the greengrocer's.

- 6 A: Where's the newspaper?  
B: It's *on* the floor.
- 7 A: Where's the post office in this town?  
B: It's *on* Mill Street.
- 8 A: Were you born *in* England?  
B: No, I was born *in* Italy.
- 9 A: Where does your dog sleep?  
B: *in* the garden.
- 10 A: Where shall I put this table?  
B: *between* the sofa and the armchair.

**9** Fill in the gaps with *on, in front of, under, in, opposite, between, near* or *behind*.



There is a lot of furniture (1) *in* the room. There is a fire-guard (2) *in front of* the large fireplace. (3) *behind* the fireplace there is a table. There's a rug (4) *under* the table. There is a small round table (5) *between* two armchairs. There is a piano (6) *opposite* the armchairs. There is a small yellow sofa (7) *near* the green sofa. There are some pictures (8) *on* the walls.

**10** Choose the correct item.

- 1 I'm going to a party *at* the weekend.  
A in                      B -                      C at
- 2 We have a big garden *behind* our house.  
A among                B behind                C between
- 3 I'm going to the dentist's *at* tomorrow morning.  
A at                      B on                      C -
- 4 Sit *beside* the fire. It will keep you warm.  
A beside                B in                      C under
- 5 I found a gold coin *among* some shells on the beach.  
A among                B at                      C in
- 6 Joan sits *between* Mary and Anne at school.  
A at                      B among                C between
- 7 Put the chicken *in* the oven.  
A at                      B behind                C in



Предлоги движения

Предлоги движения употребляются для указания направления(ний) движения относительно каких-либо объектов. К ним относятся: **along, across, up, down, into, out of, over, from ... to ... , round, onto** и **through**.



The lorry is going **along** the road.



They're walking **across** the street.



The train is going **over** the bridge. It's going **from London to York**.



The Big Wheel is going **round**.



He's jumping **over** the bar.



She's climbing **onto** the boat.



They're going **up** the steps.



They're coming **down** the steps.



The planes are going **through** the clouds.



He's getting **into** the taxi.



He's coming **out of** the building.

Примечание.

Когда имеем в виду способ передвижения, мы употребляем предлог **by**. Например: **by car / bus / train / taxi / plane / boat** **Но on foot**

Мы не употребляем предлог **by**, когда перед словами, обозначающими транспортное средство, стоит артикль, местоимение (my, your и т.д.) или существительное в притяжательном падеже.

Например: **on the train** (А не: ~~by the train~~)

**in my car** (А не: ~~by my car~~)

**on the 6 o'clock bus / in a taxi /**

**on the plane / in Ted's car**



**11** Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

- A: Where is Mr Brown?  
B: He has just gone...**into**... his office.
- A: Why are you looking at the map?  
B: Because I want to see if there's another way of getting to the village instead of going ..... the forest.
- A: What's that noise?  
B: There's a plane flying ..... the house.
- A: Where does this train go?  
B: It goes ..... Newcastle ..... Edinburgh.
- A: How do I get to the post office from here?  
B: Just walk ..... the corner and you'll see it.
- A: Where is your football?  
B: It rolled ..... the hill and fell into the river.
- A: When did you see Betty?  
B: I saw her when I came ..... the office this morning.
- A: Why are you tired?  
B: Because I just ran ..... the hill.

**12** Underline the correct preposition.



The two men are (1) **on/over** the floor. They have been fighting and they have just fallen (2) **up/down** the stairs together. One of them is crawling (3) **along/through** the floor. He is trying to escape. The other man, who is (4) **between/behind** him, is also (5) **on/at** the floor. They are both quite (6) **near/in** the door. The first man wants to get (7) **out of/through** the room. (8) **Near/Over** the two men there is a table which has a plant (9) **onto/on** it.

**13** Correct the mistakes.

- The car is going over the street.
- Uncle Jim fell through the stairs yesterday.
- I live in 14, South Grove.
- The Eiffel Tower is on Paris.
- Let's have a party on next Saturday.

Revision Box

**14** Choose the correct item.

- Diana ...**C**... her house at the moment.  
A had painted B paints C is painting
- Bob ..... fishing every weekend, but he doesn't any more.  
A used to go B goes C has gone
- The sun ..... yesterday, so we went to the beach.  
A shines B was shining C is shining
- I ..... for two hours when I decided to stop for a rest.  
A had been driving B drove C was driving
- ..... we invite Tom and Mary to the party on Saturday?  
A Shall B Will C Do
- My parents ..... buy me a computer for my birthday.  
A shall B are going to C should
- This table ..... by my father.  
A has made B made C was made
- They ..... dinner and then they went for a walk.  
A are eating B ate C had eaten
- The party ..... when I arrived.  
A had already started B is starting C starts
- The man ..... to hospital by ambulance.  
A was taken B is taken C has taken

**15** Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

- The plants will die if you don't water them.  
**unless** The plants ...*will die unless you water...* them.
- I think you should move to a bigger house.  
**would** If I ..... move to a bigger house.
- Sandra regrets not going to university.  
**had** Sandra ..... to university.
- Why don't you tidy your room?  
**wish** I ..... your room.
- Unless I have a ladder, I won't be able to paint the ceiling.  
**if** I won't be able to paint the ceiling ..... a ladder.
- I was late because I didn't set the alarm clock.  
**had** If I ..... the alarm clock, I wouldn't have been late.



Союзные слова

Для объединения двух предложений в одно обычно используются **союзные слова** (linking words) и союзы. Та часть нового предложения, которая содержит союзное слово, называется придаточным предложением времени (clause of time), причины (clause of reason), уступительным придаточным предложением (clause of contrast) и т.д., а оставшаяся часть – главным предложением (main clause).

Например: *I was angry. I didn't say anything.* **Although** *I was angry, I didn't say anything.*  
 clause of contrast                      main clause

Выражение причины / следствия

◆ Слово **because** вводит придаточное предложение **причины**. Если придаточное предложение причины идет перед главным предложением, то они разделяются запятой.

Например: **Because** *it was hot, I opened the window. I opened the window because it was hot.*

◆ Слово **so** вводит придаточное предложение **следствия** (clause of result). Придаточное предложение следствия всегда следует после главного предложения и отделяется от него запятой.

Например: *It was hot, so I opened the window.*

16 Rewrite the sentences using so or because, as in the examples.

- 1 Simon was put in prison because he robbed a bank.  
*Simon robbed a bank, so he was put in prison.*
- 2 Lisa was cold, so she put on a sweater.  
*Lisa put on a sweater because she was cold.*
- 3 Because I was hungry, I made a sandwich.  
.....
- 4 It was my birthday, so I had a party.  
.....
- 5 I went to bed late last night, so I feel tired today.  
.....
- 6 I washed my clothes because they were dirty.  
.....
- 7 She forgot to turn off the oven, so the food was burnt.  
.....
- 8 Because we were bored, we went for a walk.  
.....
- 9 The boss was angry because Jenny was late.  
.....
- 10 Frank's hair was too long, so he went to the hairdresser's.  
.....

Выражение времени

Для введения придаточных предложений **времени** употребляются слова: **when, while, before, after, till/until** и т.д.

◆ Если придаточное предложение времени идет перед главным предложением, то они разделяются запятой. Например:  
*Before you leave for Paris, please phone me.*

*Please phone me before you leave for Paris.*

◆ В придаточных предложениях времени соблюдается правило согласования времен. Если в главном предложении глагол употребляется в present/future tense или в повелительном наклонении, то в придаточном предложении времени глагол ставится в present tense. В придаточных предложениях времени future tense не употребляется (см. стр. 34).

Present tenses: present simple/continuous, present perfect simple/continuous.

Например: *You can stay here as long as you like. He will give us the money after he is/has been paid. Tidy your room before you go out. Keep quiet while I'm working.*

Если в главном предложении глагол стоит в past tense, то и в придаточном предложении времени глагол употребляется в past tense.

Past tenses: past simple/continuous, past perfect simple/continuous.

Например: *She had breakfast after she had taken a shower. Before he left, he called a taxi. He had been reading a novel for two hours before he went out.*

Внимательно посмотрите на таблицу:

Main clause		Time clause
present / future / imperative	→	present / present perfect
past simple / past perfect	→	past simple / past perfect



**17 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

- I won't leave until you ...*are*... (be) ready.
- She was playing the piano while I ..... (read) a book.
- The guests arrived after she ..... (clean) the house.
- He thought about my proposal carefully before he ..... (make) a decision.
- When I ..... (see) him, I will recognise him.

**Противопоставление**

Для противопоставления употребляются слова **but, although/even though/though, however, despite/in spite of** и т.д.

◆ **but**  
Например: He was tired, **but** he went to the party.

◆ **although / even though / though + подлежащее + глагол**  
Even though более выразительно, чем **although**. **Though** употребляется в разговорной речи.  
Например: **Although/Even though/Though she had a cold, she went to work. She went to work, although/even though/though she had a cold.**

**Though** может стоять в конце предложения, если употребляется в смысле "однако" ("however").  
Например: He is old. He is energetic, **though**.

◆ **in spite of / despite + сущ. / "-ing"-форма**  
Например: **In spite of/Despite the rain, we went for a walk. Mary didn't hurry in spite of/despite being late.**

**in spite of / despite + the fact that...**  
Например: **In spite of/Despite the fact that it was raining, we went for a walk.**

◆ **however**  
**However** обычно употребляется в начале предложения и выделяется запятой.  
Например: I was sleepy. **However**, I watched the film.

**18 Fill in the gaps with although/even though or in spite of/despite.**

- ...*Although/Even though*... we were late, we caught the bus.
- The plate broke, ..... it landed on the carpet.
- ..... her rudeness, she's actually a nice person.
- They didn't find the ring ..... looking everywhere for it.
- He's got grey hair ..... he's only twenty-five.
- He wasn't wearing a coat ..... the cold weather.
- ..... being old, my grandmother loves playing tennis.
- ..... they are brothers, they don't look alike.

**19 Complete the sentences.**

- They like going on holiday, but they don't like flying. Although they *like going on holiday, they don't like flying*.
- The car is old, but it's in good condition. Though the car .....
- It was snowing, but we went out for a walk. In spite of the fact .....
- Danny is tall, but Sandra is short. Danny is tall. However, .....
- It was a hot day, but he wore a warm coat. Although it .....
- Bill was busy. He helped me with my homework. Even though Bill was .....
- She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself. Despite falling .....

**20 Match column A with column B in order to make correct sentences.**

Column A	Column B
1 Bob phoned Ed,	a after she had packed everything.
2 Kate called a taxi	b so they lit a fire.
3 Tom was fired	c but he wasn't at home.
4 They were cold,	d I don't think she's suitable for the job.
5 Although I like Joan,	e because he was late for work every day.



## 1 Choose the correct item.

- They ...**B**... for a new house at the moment.  
A have been looking    B are looking  
C look
- She ..... her driving test.  
A has just passed    B is passing    C passes
- I think I ..... shopping on Saturday afternoon.  
A to go    B have been    C will go
- Be careful! You ..... that plate!  
A are dropping    B are going to drop    C drop
- Ben looks tired. He ..... hard all day long.  
A had been working    B has been working  
C is working
- When I left home this morning, it .....  
A was raining    B is raining    C rains
- By the time I got there, Bill .....  
A had already left    B left    C is leaving
- I ..... three years old when my sister was born.  
A am    B was being    C was
- Miss Jones ..... two cups of tea today.  
A has drunk    B is drinking    C drinks
- Sarah ..... my best friend since 1992.  
A was    B is being    C has been

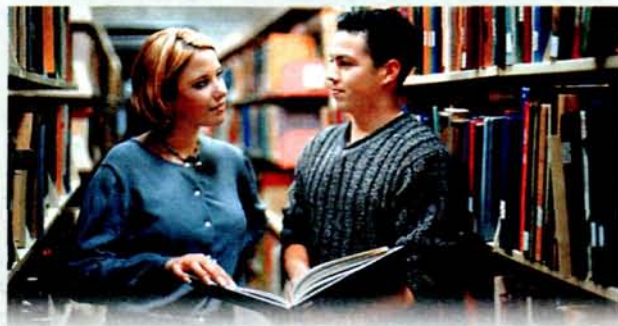
## 2 Fill in the gaps with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

- A: You ...**needn't**... hurry at the shop. I won't start cooking until you get back.  
B: Alright. I'll take my time.  
A: You ..... remember to buy eggs. You ..... forget because I need them for the cake.
- A: Can I use the scissors?  
B: Yes, but you ..... use them unless there is an adult with you, and you ..... be very careful. You might hurt yourself.
- A: ..... I tidy my room today, Mum?  
B: No, you ..... do it today, but you ..... do it before your friends come on Saturday.
- A: Dinner is ready. You ..... wash your hands before you eat.  
B: Okay, but first I ..... take off my boots.  
A: It's alright. You ..... do that because I haven't cleaned the floor yet.  
B: No, really, I ..... take them off because they're very dirty.
- A: I'm going to the supermarket. Are you coming with me?  
B: ..... I come?  
A: You ..... come if you don't want to. I'll go by myself.

## 3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

- Why don't we buy some new furniture for the house?  
*Shall we buy* some new furniture for the house?
- You aren't allowed to use the office computers.  
..... the office computers.
- It is possible that Kelly is at her brother's.  
..... at her brother's.
- Would you like me to call your parents for you?  
..... your parents for you?
- I advise you to go to university.  
..... to university.
- Richard managed to buy a new car after saving for months.  
..... a new car after saving for months.
- I'm sure Alex isn't at work.  
..... at work.
- Perhaps Eric will have time to come shopping with us.  
..... time to come shopping with us.
- It isn't necessary for you to do the washing-up now.  
..... the washing-up now.
- I'm sure he is French.  
..... French.

## 4 Fill in the gaps with the correct relative adverb or pronoun where necessary.



Yesterday, Amanda met a very interesting man in the library 1) ...**where**... she works. He was looking for a book 2) ..... he needed for some research he was doing about ancient Egypt. He told her that he worked for a director 3) ..... was making a TV programme about ancient civilizations. Amanda showed him the books 4) ..... he was looking for. She asked him for the date 5) ..... the programme would be shown on TV. When she watched it the following month, the presenter said, 'I'd like to thank the lady 6) ..... help in the library was very useful.' Amanda was very pleased and that's 7) ..... she's decided to start watching that programme more often.



**5 Rewrite the sentences in the passive.**

- 1 They must prepare the food tonight.  
*The food must be prepared tonight.*
- 2 Someone attacked Sam on Saturday night.  
.....
- 3 The maid makes the beds every morning.  
.....
- 4 He will write the letter next week.  
.....
- 5 Gary had finished the project.  
.....
- 6 Catherine is baking the birthday cake.  
.....
- 7 Did Alison inform the police?  
.....
- 8 The police were watching the burglars.  
.....
- 9 We have to wash the dishes before we go out.  
.....
- 10 You must complete your homework tonight.  
.....
- 11 They may paint their house this summer.  
.....
- 12 They teach three languages at that school.  
.....
- 13 Tara was driving the car.  
.....
- 14 Who wrote that poem?  
.....
- 15 Mrs Jefferson was tidying the kitchen.  
.....
- 16 The boss is going to offer Andrew a better post.  
.....

**6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

- 1 I will help you with the shopping later if I ...*have*... (have) time.
- 2 Unless you ..... (leave) now, you'll miss the train.
- 3 If I were you, I ..... (not/buy) a second-hand car.
- 4 If only it ..... (stop) snowing, we could go outside.
- 5 Paul had a car accident yesterday. He wishes he ..... (be) more careful.
- 6 If William ..... (pay) the electricity bill, it wouldn't have been cut off.
- 7 Sarah wishes she ..... (not/have to) work so hard every day.
- 8 I wish you ..... (not/make) a mess in the kitchen every time you cook something.

**7 Turn the following into reported speech.**

- 1 'I'll cook dinner tonight,' Mary said to Anna.  
*Mary told Anna that she would cook dinner that night.*
- 2 'Why are you crying?' Mother asked Tommy.  
.....
- 3 'Please, please lend me some money,' the woman said to the rich man.  
.....
- 4 'Don't knock on the door so loudly,' Mr Smith said to the children.  
.....
- 5 'Coffee is grown in Brazil,' the teacher said to the students.  
.....
- 6 'Can you come at four instead of five tomorrow afternoon?' Rick asked me.  
.....
- 7 'I have never seen that woman before,' the man said to the policemen.  
.....
- 8 'I'll buy you a new toy train for your birthday,' Grandpa said to Alex.  
.....
- 9 'What time is Paul coming?' I asked.  
.....
- 10 'Call me as soon as you hear about the results,' the boss said to me.  
.....

**8 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.**

Doris Alder is Peter's neighbour. She lives **in the house which is opposite his**. She is **67 years old**, but she still does many things for herself. Her favourite hobbies are **knitting and swimming**. She goes swimming **twice a week**. Every Saturday morning, Doris and Peter **go shopping** together. They take the bus into town and they come home **by taxi**. Peter admires Doris **because she is a very active person**.

- 1 *Who is Peter's neighbour?*
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....



**9 Choose the correct item.**

- Don't take that money from the table. It's ...*B*...  
A me            B mine            C my
- Dora is crying. She has cut .....  
A she            B her            C herself
- Is that ..... book?  
A your            B yours            C you
- ..... William and Thomas enjoy playing cricket.  
A Both            B All            C Neither
- That's my pencil. Please give it to .....  
A I            B my            C me
- Sam, Paul and Terry are ..... in the same class at school.  
A both            B all            C neither
- There's the shopping. Please put ..... away in the kitchen.  
A itself            B its            C it
- Enjoy ..... at the party, Beth. Have a good time!  
A your            B you            C yourself
- ..... Ruth nor Wendy has got curly hair.  
A All            B Both            C Neither
- Jeff, Alice and Rosie are all young. .... of them are old.  
A None            B All            C Both

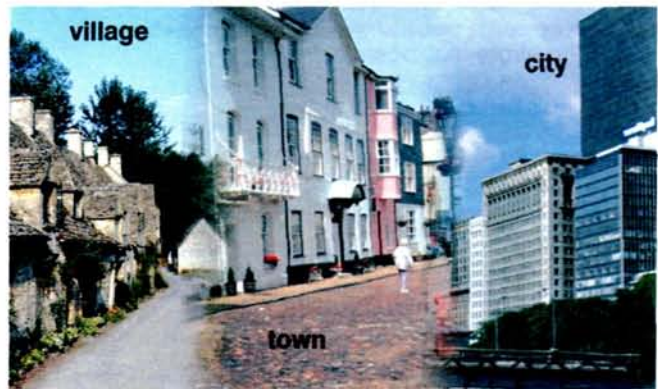
**10 Put in a/an or the.**

- This is ...*a*... very boring book. I don't want to read it.
- ..... film was very exciting – I enjoyed it.
- Tom is ..... teacher at ..... school I used to go to.
- Do you know ..... answer to this question?
- I watched ..... interesting programme on TV last night.
- ..... bakery is closed every Saturday afternoon.
- Simon hasn't got ..... job at ..... moment, but he's going for ..... interview next week.
- ..... amazing thing happened to me the other day; I won ..... lottery!
- ..... man who lives next door to me is ..... vet. He's ..... really nice man.
- My father is ..... doctor and he works at ..... hospital which is near our house.
- Don't forget to lock ..... door when you leave.
- Terry sold his old bicycle so that he could buy ..... new one.
- I found ..... old coin on the beach the other day.
- Mr Willis is ..... only person I know in this area.

**11 Complete the sentences with comparatives/superlatives adding any necessary words.**

- Danny is clever, but Melanie is ...*more clever/cleverer than*... he is.
- Russia is a big country. In fact, it is ..... country ..... the world.
- Many fruits are sweet, but I think that grapes are ..... fruit ..... all.
- I'm tall, but my sister is ..... I am.
- My grandfather is a very generous man. He is ..... anyone else I know.
- Chocolate ice-cream tastes good, but strawberry ice-cream tastes even ..... chocolate.
- I am young, but my brother is ..... person ..... our family.
- Pamela's parents are rich, but Brian's parents are ..... Pamela's.
- Apple pie is delicious, but cherry pie is ..... all.
- Billy and Steven are funny. They are ..... boys ..... my class.

**12 Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words.**



- The town is ...*bigger than*... (big) the village.
- The village is ..... (small) all.
- The city is ..... (big) all.
- There is ..... (much) traffic in a city ..... in a village.
- The city has ..... (many) offices ..... the town.
- The village is ..... (quiet) all.
- The city is ..... (noisy) all.
- There are ..... (many) people in the city ..... in the village.
- There are ..... (few) shops in the village ..... in the city.
- There are ..... (good) cinemas in the city ..... in the town.



13

Underline the correct answer.



- A: Why are you crying, William?  
 B: Because I've lost my favourite toy car. I left it  
 (1) **nowhere/somewhere/anywhere** but I can't  
 remember where.  
 A: Have you looked for it?  
 B: Yes, but I can't find it (2) **anywhere/everywhere/  
 nowhere**.  
 A: Did you ask (3) **someone/no one/anyone** if they  
 had seen it?  
 B: I asked (4) **everyone/someone/no one** in my  
 class and (5) **any/no/some** teachers too, but (6)  
**anybody/nobody/somebody** had seen it.  
 A: Well, never mind, I'll buy you (7)  
**anything/everything/something** else.  
 B: I don't want (8) **nothing/anything/everything** else  
 – I want my favourite toy car!  
 A: William, what's that in your pocket?  
 B: It's my car! It was here all the time!

14

Fill in the gaps with *some, any, no, every* or one of their derivatives.

- 1 A: I would like ...*some*... jam on my toast.  
 B: I'm sorry, I haven't got .....  
 2 A: Mum, there's ..... toothpaste left.  
 B: There's a new tube in the bathroom cupboard.  
 3 A: Can I do ..... to help?  
 B: No, thank you.  
 4 A: Would you like ..... cheese?  
 B: No, thank you. Don't put ..... on my plate.  
 5 A: Did you know many people at the party?  
 B: Yes! I knew .....

- 6 A: Do you often go to the gym?  
 B: Yes. I go ..... day.  
 7 A: Do you know where the new café is?  
 B: It's ..... in the shopping centre.  
 8 A: Sorry, what did you say?  
 B: ..... I only coughed.  
 9 A: This exercise is very difficult.  
 B: It's easy Jack! ..... could do it!  
 10 A: Who told you about it?  
 B: ..... I found out myself.  
 11 A: Mum, I've baked a cake!  
 B: I know. The kitchen's a mess. There's flour  
 ..... !  
 12 A: Where did you go on holiday last year?  
 B: ..... I stayed at home.

15

Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or the -ing form.

- 1 A: Did you enjoy ...*travelling*... (travel) around  
 Europe?  
 B: Yes, but it's nice ..... (be) back home.  
 2 A: Where's Mum?  
 B: She's gone to the shop ..... (buy)  
 some eggs and milk.  
 3 A: Have you finished your letter yet?  
 B: No. I only started ..... (write) it five  
 minutes ago.  
 4 A: What did you do on Saturday afternoon?  
 B: I went ..... (cycle) with  
 my family.  
 5 A: We must ..... (go) in a minute.  
 B: I know. I'm almost ready.  
 6 A: I don't like ..... (do) all the  
 housework by myself.  
 B: I'll help you with it.  
 7 A: Was Uncle John pleased ..... (see) you?  
 B: Yes. He was very surprised.  
 8 A: Can I ask you something?  
 B: I'm busy ..... (work) at  
 the moment. Ask me later.

16

Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Neither John and Sally likes swimming.  
 2 I don't want nothing to eat at the moment.  
 3 You needn't run across the road. It's dangerous.  
 4 Have you never been to Italy?  
 5 I was running very fast when I was young, but I can't  
 now.  
 6 Tom was the man which helped me paint my house.  
 7 Sandra had visited the zoo with her friends  
 yesterday.



# Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past	Past Participle
be	was	been	leave	left	left
bear	bore	born(e)	lend	lent	lent
beat	beat	beaten	let	let	let
become	became	become	lie	lay	lain
begin	began	begun	light	lit	lit
bite	bit	bitten	lose	lost	lost
blow	blew	blown	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	mean	meant	meant
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	pay	paid	paid
burn	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)	put	put	put
burst	burst	burst	read	read	read
buy	bought	bought	ride	rode	ridden
can	could	(been able to)	ring	rang	rung
catch	caught	caught	rise	rose	risen
choose	chose	chosen	run	ran	run
come	came	come	say	said	said
cost	cost	cost	see	saw	seen
cut	cut	cut	sell	sold	sold
deal	dealt	dealt	send	sent	sent
dig	dug	dug	set	set	set
do	did	done	sew	sewed	sewn
draw	drew	drawn	shake	shook	shaken
dream	dreamt (dreamed)	dreamt (dreamed)	shine	shone	shone
drink	drank	drunk	shoot	shot	shot
drive	drove	driven	show	showed	shown
eat	ate	eaten	shut	shut	shut
fall	fell	fallen	sing	sang	sung
feed	fed	fed	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	smell	smelt (smelled)	smelt (smelled)
find	found	found	speak	spoke	spoken
fly	flew	flown	spell	spelt (spelled)	spelt (spelled)
forbid	forbade	forbidden	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	spill	spilt	spilt
forgive	forgave	forgiven	spoil	spoilt (spoiled)	spoilt (spoiled)
freeze	froze	frozen	spread	spread	spread
get	got	got	stand	stood	stood
give	gave	given	steal	stole	stolen
go	went	gone	stick	stuck	stuck
grow	grew	grown	sting	stung	stung
hang	hung (hanged)	hung (hanged)	strike	struck	struck
have	had	had	swear	swore	sworn
hear	heard	heard	sweep	swept	swept
hide	hid	hidden	swim	swam	swum
hit	hit	hit	take	took	taken
hold	held	held	teach	taught	taught
hurt	hurt	hurt	tear	tore	torn
keep	kept	kept	tell	told	told
know	knew	known	think	thought	thought
lay	laid	laid	throw	threw	thrown
lead	led	led	understand	understood	understood
learn	learnt (learned)	learnt (learned)	wake	woke	woken
			wear	wore	worn
			win	won	won
			write	wrote	written



## A

a bit of = немного  
 abroad = (to be ~) за границей, (to go ~) за границу  
 accept = принимать  
 accident = несчастный случай, авария  
 AD = н.э. (нашей эры)  
 admit = признавать, принимать  
 adult = взрослый  
 advantage = преимущество  
 adventurous = рискованный, смелый  
 advertisement = реклама, объявление  
 afford = позволить себе  
 air hostess = стюардесса  
 aircraft = самолет, летательный аппарат  
 airship = дирижабль  
 alarm clock = будильник  
 alike = одинаковый, одинаково  
 amazing = поразительный, изумительный, замечательный  
 ambulance = скорая помощь  
 ancient = древний  
 ankle = лодыжка  
 anniversary = годовщина  
 announce = объявлять, заявлять, извещать  
 ant = муравей  
 appear = появляться, казаться  
 appearance = появление, выступление, внешность  
 apply for a job with = подавать заявление о приеме на работу в  
 appointment = прием, встреча, назначение  
 argue = ссориться, доказывать  
 arrange = устраивать, организовывать, назначать  
 arrangements = приготовления  
 ask for directions = спрашивать дорогу  
 attend = посещать, присутствовать на  
 attic = чердак, мансарда  
 avoid = избегать  
 axe = топор

## B

babysitter = приходящая няня  
 bake = печь, испечь  
 bakery = булочная, пекарня  
 barefoot = босой, босиком  
 bark = лай, лаять  
 barn = амбар, сарай  
 barrel = бочка  
 battle = битва, сражение, сражаться  
 be bored = скучать  
 be fit = быть в хорошей форме, здоровым  
 be in a hurry = спешить  
 be on strike = бастовать  
 be thirsty = хотеть пить, испытывать жажду  
 bee = пчела

beg = просить, умолять  
 belongings = вещи, принадлежности, пожитки  
 bench = скамья, скамейка  
 bill = счет  
 bin = мусорное ведро  
 bitter = горький  
 bloom = цветок, цвести  
 blow = дуть  
 blow up = взрывать(ся), раздражаться  
 bone = кость  
 book = книга, заказывать, бронировать  
 border = граница  
 boring = скучный  
 borrow = занимать, брать на время  
 borrow books = брать книги (в библиотеке)  
 brave = смелый, храбрый  
 break = перерыв, разбивать, ломать  
 break down = ломаться, сломаться  
 break in = вламываться, вмешиваться  
 break out = раздражаться, сбегать  
 bride = невеста  
 bridesmaid = подружка невесты  
 bruise = синяк  
 brush = щетка, кисть, подметать/чистить (щеткой)  
 bunch (of flowers) = букет (цветов)  
 burglar alarm = сигнализация  
 burgle = совершать кражу со взломом  
 bush = куст  
 busy = занятой, оживленный, шумный

## C

cage = клетка  
 call = звонок, звонить, вызывать  
 camp-site = кемпинг  
 cancel = отменять  
 candlestick = подсвечник  
 canvas = холст  
 car park = автостоянка  
 carpet = ковер  
 cartoon = мультфильм, комикс  
 cash = наличные (деньги)  
 cashier = кассир  
 castle = замок  
 cathedral = собор  
 cause = причина, являться причиной, вызывать  
 ceiling = потолок  
 celebration = праздник, празднование  
 cellar = подвал  
 cereal = злак, хлопья (к завтраку)  
 chalet = шале (небольшой деревянный дом в горах или зоне отдыха)  
 championship = чемпионат  
 charity = благотворительность  
 charts = хит-парад  
 chase = погоня, гнаться, гоняться



cheer = приветствовать  
cheerful = веселый  
cheesecake = творожный кекс, ватрушка  
cheetah = гепард  
chop = рубить, резать  
citizen = гражданин, горожанин  
cliff = скала, утес  
climb = подниматься, взбираться  
coat-hanger = вешалка  
collar = воротник  
collect = собирать, коллекционировать, забирать  
comfortable = удобный, комфортабельный  
competition = соревнование, конкурс  
complain = жаловаться  
complete = полный, заканчивать, завершать  
compose = сочинять, писать (музыку)  
Congratulations! = Поздравляю!  
convenient = удобный  
cornflakes = кукурузные хлопья  
cosy = уютный, удобный  
cough = кашель, кашлять  
counsellor = советник, консультант  
countryside = сельская местность  
crash = потерпеть аварию, разбиться, врезаться  
crawl = ползать, ползти  
crayon = цветной мелок  
crime = преступление  
criminal = преступник, преступный  
cry = крик, плакать, кричать  
crystal = хрусталь, хрустальный  
curtain = занавеска  
customer = покупатель, клиент  
cut off (electricity) = отключать (электричество)  
cycle = велосипед, ездить на велосипеде

### D

damage = ущерб, повреждение, повреждать  
dangerous = опасный  
dawn = рассвет, заря, рассветать  
deal = сделка  
decide = решать, убеждать  
decorate = украшать, отделывать  
degree = степень, ученая степень, градус  
delay = задержка, откладывать, задерживать  
delicious = очень вкусный, восхитительный  
deliver = доставлять, вручать  
deny = отрицать, отвергать  
department store = универсальный магазин  
deposit = вклад, вкладывать, помещать  
desert = пустыня  
destination = место назначения, цель  
destroy = разрушать, уничтожать  
dial = набирать (номер по телефону)  
direct = руководить, ставить (фильм)  
director = директор, руководитель, режиссер

disadvantage = недостаток  
disappointed = разочарованный, разочарован  
discover = обнаруживать, открывать  
disease = болезнь  
disguise = маскироваться, переодеваться  
dishwasher = посудомоечная машина  
disturb = беспокоить, мешать  
doughnut = пончик  
drawer = ящик (выдвижной)  
driver's license = водительские права  
drop = капля, падать, ронять  
dry = сухой, сушить, сохнуть  
dry-cleaner's = химчистка  
dust = пыль, вытирать пыль

### E

earn = зарабатывать, заслуживать  
earrings = серьги  
Easter = Пасха, пасхальный  
edge of the woods = опушка леса  
electric battery = электрическая батарея  
electrician = электромонтер, электрик  
embassy = посольство  
emperor = император  
employee = служащий, работник  
engagement ring = обручальное кольцо  
enjoyable = приятный  
entertain = развлекать, принимать, обслуживать  
entrance = вход  
environment (the ~) = окружающая среда  
erupt = извергаться, извергнуться (о вулкане)  
escape = побег, выход, убежать, сбежать  
eventually = в конце концов  
examine = рассматривать, осматривать  
exciting = восхитительный  
exhausted = истощенный, изможденный  
expect = ожидать, полагать  
expire = истекать, истечь (о сроке действия документа)  
explode = взрывать(ся)  
explore = исследовать, изучать  
explorer = исследователь  
eyesight = зрение

### F

factory = фабрика  
fail an exam = провалить экзамен  
faint = слабый, падать в обморок  
falcon = сокол  
farmhouse = фермерский дом  
fascinating = захватывающий, очаровательный  
fatty = жирный  
fault = вина  
feather = перо



ferry boat = паром  
 fight = драка, драться  
 find out = узнавать, распознавать  
 fire-fighter = пожарник, пожарный  
 fire-guard = каминная решетка  
 fireman = пожарник, пожарный  
 fireplace = камин  
 fix = устанавливать, налаживать, чинить  
 flat tyre = спущенная шина  
 flight = полет, рейс (самолета)  
 flight attendant = стюард (стюардесса)  
 fluently = бегло, свободно  
 forbid = запрещать  
 fortune-teller = предсказатель(ница) судьбы, гадалка  
 frightened = испуганный, испуган  
 frightening = страшный, ужасный  
 funfair = луна-парк, парк аттракционов

## G

gardener = садовник, садовод  
 gardening = садоводство  
 generous = щедрый  
 get a promotion = получить повышение в должности  
 ghost = привидение, призрак  
 gift = подарок  
 give a lift = подвозить, подвезти  
 glove = перчатка  
 go camping = отправляться в поход  
 go on a diet = сесть на диету  
 gosh = Боже мой!  
 grade = оценка  
 grass = трава, газон  
 greengrocer's = лавка зеленщика  
 guard = охрана, охранять  
 guest = гость, постоялец (в гостинице)  
 gym = спортивный зал

## H

hairdresser's = парикмахерская  
 harbour = гавань  
 headmaster = директор школы  
 helicopter = вертолет  
 hide = прятать(ся)  
 hijack = угон, угонять  
 hijacker = угонщик  
 hill = холм, небольшая гора  
 hit = ударять, сталкиваться  
 honeymoon = медовый месяц  
 Hoover = пылесос, пылесосить  
 horrible = ужасный, отвратительный  
 however = однако  
 hurry = спешка, спешить, торопиться  
 hurt = причинять боль, обижать, повреждать

## I

ice-rink = каток  
 ice-skate = кататься на коньках  
 icy = ледяной, покрытый льдом  
 impossible = невозможный, невероятный  
 in advance = заранее, предварительно  
 indoors = в помещении, дома  
 in-flight = на борту самолета, во время полета  
 inform = информировать, сообщать  
 inherit = наследовать, унаследовать  
 injured = раненый, пострадавший  
 intelligent = умный, разумный  
 intend = намереваться  
 invent = изобретать  
 involve = вовлекать  
 irritated = раздраженный  
 island = остров  
 it's (not) worth to = сто́ит (не сто́ит) что-либо делать

## J

jewellery shop = ювелирный магазин  
 jogging = бег трусцой

## K

keep away from = держаться подальше от  
 Keep in touch. = Не пропадай (поддерживай связь)./Пиши.  
 kick = удар, ударять ногой, лягаться  
 kitten = котенок  
 knit = вязать  
 knock down = сбивать

## L

ladder = лестница  
 land = земля, высаживаться, приземляться  
 laundrette (launderette) = прачечная самообслуживания  
 lawn = газон  
 lawnmower = газонокосилка  
 lawyer = адвокат, юрист  
 lazy = ленивый  
 leaflet = листовка  
 lend = одалживать, одолжить  
 lifetime = жизнь  
 light = свет, светлый, легкий, зажигать, освещать  
 light bulb = электрическая лампочка  
 limo (сокр. от limousine) = лимузин  
 lonely = одинокий  
 look after = ухаживать за, заботиться о  
 look around = осматривать(ся)  
 look for = искать  
 look forward to = ждать с нетерпением



lose weight = худеть, похудеть  
luckily = к счастью  
luggage = багаж  
luxurious = роскошный  
luxury = роскошь, роскошный

### M

magnificent = великолепный  
maid = служанка, горничная  
mammal = млекопитающее  
mansion = особняк  
mayor = мэр  
meeting = встреча, собрание  
mess = беспорядок  
message = сообщение  
mix = смесь, смешивать, замешивать  
mood = настроение  
move house = переезжать  
mow = подстригать, косить (траву)  
murder = убийство, убивать

### N

nanny = няня  
naughty = непослушный  
necklace = ожерелье  
neighbour = сосед  
neighbourhood = окрестность, соседи  
nervous = нервный  
nest = гнездо  
news bulletin = сводка новостей  
nurse = медсестра

### O

oblige = обязывать  
occasion = случай, событие  
ocean floor = дно океана  
octopus = осьминог  
offer = предложение, предлагать  
oil = масло (растительное)  
on board = на борту  
opportunity = возможность  
optician = окулист  
order = приказ, заказ, заказывать  
organise (organize) = организовывать, устраивать  
outside = снаружи, вне (помещения), на улице  
oven = духовка  
oversleep = проспаться  
overtime = сверхурочное время  
owe = быть должным  
owl = сова  
own = собственный, владеть  
owner = владелец, хозяин

### P

pack = паковать, упаковывать  
paint = краска, красить, рисовать  
panic = паника, паниковать  
park keeper = смотритель парка  
part-time job = работа на неполной ставке  
pass an exam = сдать экзамен  
pass the driving test = сдать экзамен по вождению  
passenger = пассажир  
pasta = макаронные изделия  
patient = пациент  
pavement = тротуар, дорожное покрытие  
paw = лапа  
peaceful = мирный  
penfriend = друг по переписке  
permission = разрешение, позволение  
persuade = убеждать, уговаривать  
pet shop = зоомагазин  
petrol = бензин  
photocopier = ксерокс  
pick (flowers) = собирать/рвать (цветы)  
pick up = забрать, зайти за, заехать за  
pie = пирог, пирожок  
plant = растение, сажать растения  
playground = детская площадка, площадка для игр  
plumber = водопроводчик  
pocket money = карманные деньги  
polar bear = белый медведь  
polish = полировать, чистить  
polite = вежливый  
politician = политик  
poster = афиша, плакат  
pot = горшок, чайник, кофейник  
pound = фунт  
power cut = отключение электроэнергии  
pray = молиться, молить, умолять  
presenter = диктор, ведущий  
prison = тюрьма  
prisoner = заключенный  
probably = вероятно  
produce = производить  
promise = обещание, обещать  
promote = продвигать по службе, повышать в должности  
prompt = подсказка, подсказывать  
properly = должным образом, как следует  
proposal = предложение  
protect = защищать  
proud = гордый  
punish = наказывать  
puppy = щенок  
purse = кошелек, сумочка  
put away = убирать, прятать  
put out (the fire) = тушить (пожар)  
put up (a tent) = разбивать, ставить (палатку)



## Q

queue = очередь

## R

railway station = железнодорожный вокзал,  
железнодорожная станция

ran out of petrol (I ~) = (у меня) кончился бензин

reach = достигать, доставать, дотягиваться

realise (realize) = осознать, понимать

rebuilding = реконструкция, восстановление

receiver = телефонная трубка

reception = регистрация, прием

recipe = рецепт

recognise (recognize) = узнавать, признавать

record = запись, записывать

refer = отсылать, направлять, передавать

regret = сожаление, сожалеть

remaining = сохранившийся, оставшийся

rent = квартирная плата, снимать/снять (дом,  
квартиру)

repair = ремонт, чинить, ремонтировать

replace = класть обратно, заменять

reply = ответ, отвечать

rescue = спасение, спасать

research = исследование, исследовать

responsibly = ответственно

retire = выйти на пенсию

review = рецензия, рецензировать

rhino (rhinoceros) = носорог

rob = обкрадывать, красть

robber = грабитель

robbery = ограбление, грабеж

rollercoaster = американские горки (аттракцион)

roller-skate = кататься на роликах

rub = тереть, натирать, вытирать

rubbish = мусор

rudeness = грубость

rug = коврик, плед

ruins = руины, развалины

rule = правило, власть, управлять, править

## S

safe = безопасный, надежный

sail = парус, плавать

sailor = моряк

sandcastle = замок из песка

satisfactorily = удовлетворительно

saucerpan = кастрюля

save = спасать, экономить, откладывать, сохранять

scarf = шарф

scary = страшный

scissors = ножницы

senior manager = главный управляющий

serve = служить, обслуживать, подавать

set off = отправляться, отправиться

share a room with = проживать в комнате  
совместно с

sharp = острый, резкий

shed = сарай, навес

sheep = овца

shelf = полка

shock = потрясать, шокировать

shoelace = шнурок

shop assistant = продавец

shorten = укорачивать

sign = знак, вывеска, подписывать

sincere = искренний

sink = топить, тонуть

skill = навык, умение

sleeve = рукав

slip = скользить, поскользнуться

slippers = тапочки

smart = опрятный, модный

so far = пока, до сих пор

sock = носок

solar system = солнечная система

sore throat = больное горло

spoil = портить, испортить

spoon = ложка

staff = персонал, штат

stage = сцена

stairs = лестница

stall = лапек, киоск

star = звезда, играть главную роль

starfish = морская звезда

stay up late = не ложиться спать допоздна

steal = воровать, красть

stick = палка, клеить, застревать, застрять

sting = жало, жалить

stock room = склад

store = запас, хранить

stranger = незнакомец, посторонний

stream = ручей, поток

stressful job = напряженная работа

strike = забастовка, удар, ударять

stripe = полоса, полоска

success = успех, удача

successful = успешный, удачный

suede = замша, замшевый

suggest = предлагать, предполагать

suit = костюм

sunbathe = загорать

sunglasses = солнцезащитные очки

sunscreen = солнцезащитный крем

sunshine = солнечный свет

suntanned = загорелый

support = поддержка, поддерживать

survive = выжить, уцелеть



### T

tablecloth = скатерть  
take control of = взять в свои руки управление  
takeaway pizza = пицца на вынос  
tap = кран  
taste = вкус, пробовать, иметь вкус  
term = четверть (в школе), триместр  
(в университете, колледже)  
thick = толстый  
thief = вор  
threaten = грозить, угрожать  
throw = бросок, бросать  
tidy = опрятный, прибирать, наводить порядок  
tightrope = натянутый канат  
till = касса (в магазине)  
time off = свободное время  
traffic = движение  
train = поезд, учить, тренировать(ся)  
training course = курс профессиональной  
подготовки  
travel agent = работник туристического агентства  
tricky question = трудный, каверзный вопрос  
trip = поездка, прогулка, путешествие  
trousers = брюки  
trumpet = труба  
trust = доверие, доверять, верить  
T-shirt = футболка  
tube = тубик  
turkey = индейка  
turn into = превращать в  
turn off = выключать, сворачивать  
turn on = включать  
TV series = телевизионный сериал

### U

UFO = НЛО (неопознанный летающий объект)  
uncover = открывать, обнаруживать  
unfortunately = к сожалению  
unsinkable = непотопляемый  
untidy = неопрятный, неаккуратный  
up-and-coming = перспективный, подающий  
надежды  
update = вносить изменения и дополнения  
upset = расстроенный, расстраивать(ся)  
useless = непригодный, бесполезный

### V

vacuum cleaner = пылесос  
vet = ветеринар  
view = вид, взгляд, рассматривать  
voyage = путешествие (морское), плавание, полет,  
путешествовать

### W

walk a dog = выгуливать собаку  
wallet = бумажник  
washing-machine = стиральная машина  
waste-paper basket = корзина для бумаг  
wedding = свадьба  
well-known = известный  
wet = мокрый, влажный, сырой  
whale = кит  
windscreen = лобовое стекло (автомобиля)  
woollen = шерстяной  
wreck = обломки, остов (затонувшего корабля)



Unit 1

- 1 + ing:** studying, mending, trying, cooking, sleeping;  
**-je = y + ing:** lying, dying; **-g = ing:** diving, writing, taking; **двойная согласная + ing:** swimming, shopping, stopping, sitting.
- 2** 2 am/'m not doing, 3 Is Dad painting, 4 is/'s running, 5 are playing, 6 is/'s studying, 7 are making, 8 Are you listening.
- 3** 2 are having, 3 are wearing, 4 is wearing, 5 are smiling, 6 are talking, 7 are listening, 8 is drinking, 9 is eating, 10 are enjoying.
- 4** 2 SA: Are the four people having dinner?  
 SB: Yes, they are.  
 3 SA: Are the children talking?  
 SB: No, they aren't. They are listening.  
 4 SA: Is the girl drinking some juice?  
 SB: No, she isn't. She's drinking some wine.  
 5 SA: Is the boy eating some ice-cream?  
 SB: No, he isn't. He's eating some bread.
- 5 -s:** opens, prays, puts, likes, says, plays, begins;  
**-es:** mixes, misses, does, catches, washes, watches, passes; **-ies:** dries, cries, copies.
- 6** 2 Do you come, 3 play, 4 leave, 5 does not/n't know.
- 7 / s /:** looks, speaks, kicks, puts, walks, jumps, coughs, helps, writes, eats; **/ iz /:** catches, brushes, dances, closes, watches, washes, loses, changes; **/ z /:** drives, rides, opens, plays, knows, sees, listens, travels, rains.
- 8** 2 dances; 3 is/'s working; 4 do you do; 5 are you packing, am/'m flying; 6 doesn't know; 7 is/'s taking.
- 9** 2 Is he always on time for work?  
 3 Karen sometimes has cereal for breakfast.  
 4 Paul doesn't usually listen to music in the evening.  
 5 The children rarely help with the housework.  
 6 Must you always play your music so loud?  
 7 Sheila can never park her car properly.
- 10** 2 always gets up, 3 starts, 4 is not/n't, 5 is packing, 6 is going, 7 is singing, 8 is looking for, 9 is calling, 10 leaves/is leaving, 11 is Charlie going.
- 11** 3 SA: Does Charlie start work at 4 o'clock every morning? SB: Yes, he does.  
 4 SA: Is Charlie going on holiday next week?  
 SB: No, he isn't. He's going on holiday today.  
 5 SA: Is Charlie singing to himself? SB: Yes, he is.  
 6 SA: Is Charlie looking for his tickets right now?  
 SB: Yes, he is.  
 7 SA: Is the plane leaving/Does the plane leave in an hour? SB: Yes, it is/does.  
 8 SA: Is Charlie going to Tahiti?  
 SB: No, he isn't. He's going to Hawaii.

- 12** 2 What does the nurse do? She looks after patients. Is she looking after patients now? No, she isn't. She's reading a book.  
 3 What does the maid do? She cleans the house. Is she cleaning the house now? No, she isn't. She's talking on the phone.  
 4 What does the vet do? He treats animals. Is he treating animals now? No, he isn't. He's listening to music.  
 5 What does the mechanic do? He repairs cars. Is he repairing cars now? No, he isn't. He's eating a sandwich.  
 6 What does the waiter do? He serves customers. Is he serving customers now? No, he isn't. He's reading a newspaper.
- 13** 2 Do I know, 3 think, 4 is starrng, 5 is/'s, 6 is he coming, 7 need, 8 loves, 9 enjoys, 10 is he staying, 11 wants, 12 doesn't like, 13 is/'s staying.
- 14** 2 does this sign mean, 3 usually meet, 4 is/'s training, 5 owns, 6 are playing, 7 doesn't usually have, 8 buys, 9 are not/n't going, 10 Does Pierre speak, speaks.
- 15** 2 'm writing, 3 am/'m repairing, 4 usually ride, 5 start, 6 finish, 7 have, 8 'm working, 9 'm, 10 is leaving, 11 worry.
- 16** 1 Steve **is going** fishing tomorrow.  
 2 Rebecca **washes** her hair every day.  
 3 I **visit** my grandparents every week.  
 4 Tim doesn't **want** to do his homework.  
 5 He **is sitting** on the floor at the moment.  
 6 Do you **always** watch TV in the evenings?  
 7 Sarah **drinks** coffee every morning.  
 8 They don't **usually** go on holiday in May.  
 9 Does she work late? No, she **never** does.  
 10 Peter **is looking** for a new house at the moment.
- 17** 1 are/'re always leaving; 2 Do you like, does it cost; 3 is, is/'s snowing.

Unit 2

- 1 + ed:** prayed, called, missed, enjoyed, looked;  
**+ d:** closed, loved, danced, phoned, lived;  
**-y = ied:** studied, cried, tidied, tried, carried;  
**двойная согласная + ed:** travelled, stopped, robbed, dropped, referred.
- 2** 2 She turned it off half an hour ago. 3 He stopped six months ago. 4 She baked it half an hour ago. 5 She arranged it two weeks ago. 6 He moved three days ago. 7 He tidied it two hours ago.
- 3 / id /:** arrested, visited, needed, loaded, accepted, persuaded; **/ t /:** washed, worked, helped, cooked, finished, watched, laughed, passed, typed;  
**/ d /:** opened, carried, cleaned, lived, stayed, arranged, rubbed.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 4** 2 A Did you watch, B didn't enjoy;  
3 A Did your neighbours move, B helped;  
4 A crashed, B survived; 5 A didn't play;  
6 A Did you see, B had.
- 5** 2 didn't go (definite/stated time);  
3 didn't sing (definite/ stated time);  
4 fought (repeated past action);  
5 helped (people who are no longer alive);  
6 baked (definite/stated time);  
7 Did Sam enjoy (definite/stated time);  
8 fell, hurt (actions happening immediately one after the other).
- 6** A 2 decided, 3 needed, 4 decorated, 5 planted, 6 made, 7 moved; B 2 painted, 3 took, 4 loved, 5 created, 6 died.
- 7** 2 wanted, 3 gave, 4 left, 5 began, 6 discovered, 7 died, 8 took, 9 set off, 10 survived, 11 arrived, 12 were.
- 8** 3 SA: Did they leave Spain in 1619?  
SB: No, they didn't. They left Spain in 1519.  
4 SA: Was the journey long and dangerous?  
SB: Yes, it was.  
5 SA: Did Magellan discover the Pacific Ocean?  
SB: Yes, he did.  
6 SA: Did Magellan die with soldiers in a battle?  
SB: Yes, he did.  
7 SA: Did a Spanish sailor complete the voyage?  
SB: Yes, he did.  
8 SA: Did the remaining ship reach Spain in 1523?  
SB: No, it didn't. It reached Spain in 1522.
- 9** 2 worked, 3 did you do, 4 took, 5 Did you earn, 6 spent, 7 did you spend, 8 went, 9 Did you have, 10 was.
- 10** (Вариант ответов)  
2 SA: Who did you go with?  
SB: I went with my parents and my sister.  
3 SA: Did you have a good time?  
SB: Yes, we did. It was wonderful.  
4 SA: Did you stay at a camp-site?  
SB: No, we didn't. We stayed at a hotel.  
5 SA: Was the weather good?  
SB: Yes, it was. It was hot almost every day.  
6 SA: What did you do every day?  
SB: We drove around the countryside and visited the town.  
7 SA: Did you eat at restaurants?  
SB: No, we didn't. We usually ate at the hotel, or we went on picnics.  
8 SA: Did you go to the beach?  
SB: Yes, we did. We often went to the beach in the morning.
- 11** 2 Peter used to go to work by bus, but now he goes to work by car. 3 Peter used to eat at home, but now he eats out. 4 Peter used to watch TV, but now he goes to the theatre. 5 Peter used to spend his holidays at a camp-site, but now he spends his holidays travelling.
- 12** 2 used to drink, 3 used to live, 4 Did you use to go, 5 didn't use to like, 6 didn't use to eat, 7 used to play, 8 used to spend.
- 14** 2 B, 3 C, 4 A, 5 B, 6 A, 7 B, 8 C, 9 A, 10 B.

## Unit 3

- 1** 2 SA: What were Jim and Robert doing?  
SB: They were checking some reports.  
3 SA: What was Sarah doing?  
SB: She was talking on the phone.  
4 SA: What were the directors doing?  
SB: They were having a meeting.  
5 SA: What was Mary doing?  
SB: She was working on the computer.  
6 SA: What was Kim doing?  
SB: She was reading a letter.
- 2** 2 was sitting, 3 was talking, 4 were putting, 5 were doing, 6 was standing, 7 were wearing, 8 were holding, 9 were shouting, 10 was waiting.
- 3** 2 c, 3 a, 4 b, 5 d, 6 f.
- 4** 2 As/When/While Laura was making some tea, she dropped the kettle. Laura was making some tea when she dropped the kettle.  
3 As/When/While Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden, it started raining. Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden when it started raining.  
4 As/When/While Peter was driving his car, he got a flat tyre. Peter was driving his car when he got a flat tyre.  
5 As/When/While she was walking in the park, a dog attacked her. She was walking in the park when a dog attacked her.
- 5** 2 were walking, began – "Walking" is the longer action.  
3 was repairing, arrived – "Repairing" is the longer action.  
4 was eating, rang – "Eating" is the longer action.  
5 was riding, dropped – "Riding" is the longer action.  
6 saw, were driving – "Driving" is the longer action.  
7 was watching, broke down – "Watching" is the longer action.  
8 were talking, came – "Talking" is the longer action.
- 6** (Вариант ответов)  
The young man was listening to music. The two women were talking. The older man was reading his newspaper. Two Japanese tourists were drinking soft drinks.
- 7** 2 SA: Was the young man listening to music?  
SB: Yes, he was.  
3 SA: Was the older man reading a book?  
SB: No, he wasn't. He was reading a newspaper.  
4 SA: Were the women knitting?  
SB: No, they weren't. They were talking.  
5 SA: Were the Japanese tourists taking pictures?  
SB: No, they weren't. They were drinking soft drinks.



**8 A** 2 was walking, 3 was throwing, 4 were running, 5 was planting, 6 were sitting.

**B** 1 were wearing, 2 were all carrying, 3 was taking, 4 was crying, 5 was shining, 6 were smiling.

**9** (Вариант ответов)

2 SA: What were you doing at two o'clock this morning?  
SB: I was sleeping.

3 SA: What were you doing at half past nine last Sunday evening? SB: I was watching television.

4 SA: What were you doing an hour ago?  
SB: I was playing tennis.

5 SA: What were you doing at noon last Saturday?  
SB: I was eating lunch.

**10** 2 was dancing, 3 were you laughing, 4 drank, 5 rode, 6 was writing, 7 was raining, 8 played, 9 sang, 10 was cleaning.

**11 A** 2 was driving, 3 flew, 4 tried, 5 crashed, 6 was not/wasn't;

**B** 1 went, 2 was talking, 3 arrived, 4 gave, 5 was, 6 ended;

**C** 1 tidied, 2 was tidying, 3 found, 4 had, 5 did not/didn't want, 6 put, 7 stored.

**12** 2 decided, 3 was shining, 4 were singing, 5 felt, 6 was, 7 climbed, 8 were admiring, 9 heard, 10 looked, 11 did not/didn't see, 12 thought, 13 saw, 14 decided, 15 was examining, 16 heard, 17 said, 18 did not/didn't close, 19 turned, 20 saw, 21 knew, 22 was watching.

**13** 2 was, 3 were having, 4 was, 5 was shining, 6 was, 7 hit, 8 fell, 9 was not/wasn't, 10 got.

**14** 1 Philip was washing the car **when** the fire started. 2 Neil was studying **while** his sister was listening to music. 3 Harriet **opened** the door and walked into the house. 4 We **had** lunch at a lovely restaurant every day when we were on holiday. 5 Brian **was drinking** tea at five o'clock yesterday afternoon. 6 Dad was repairing the TV while Mum **was cooking** dinner. 7 I **went to the cinema** last Saturday. 8 I **bought** a new dress for my party yesterday. 9 While Jeff **was building** the garden shed, he hurt himself. 10 While the teacher **was speaking**, the students were listening to him.

**15** 1 rang; 2 is repairing; 3 was reading, called; 4 Are, do you want; 5 were singing, were playing; 6 works.

**16** 2 C, 3 C, 4 A, 5 C, 6 C, 7 C, 8 A, 9 A, 10 B, 11 B, 12 C.

## Unit 4

**1** 2 I haven't had a break since this morning.  
3 I haven't travelled abroad since last summer.  
4 I haven't watched TV since last night.  
5 I haven't bought a present since December.  
6 I haven't written a letter since Christmas.  
7 I haven't eaten dinner at a restaurant since last month.

**2** SA: Have you bought a bigger car? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: Have you moved house? SB: No, I haven't.  
SA: Have you got married? SB: No, I haven't.  
SA: Have you finished your studies? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: Have you started taking karate lessons?  
SB: Yes, I have.

**3** 2 since, 3 since, 4 for, 5 for, 6 for, 7 since, 8 since, 9 for.

**4** 2 f, 3 a, 4 b, 5 d, 6 e.

**5** 1 Since; 2 recently; 3 yet; 4 yet, already; 5 always; 6 ever, never.

**6** 2 has just left, 3 haven't eaten, 4 have already done, 5 haven't dried, 6 have already eaten.

**7** 2 have ... been, 3 have gone, 4 has gone to, 5 have ... been, 6 has been to, 7 have gone to.

**8** 2 has been to, 3 have been to, 4 has gone to, 5 have been.

**9** 1 have been; 2 Have you written, wrote; 3 have you been, got; 4 haven't seen, saw; 5 Have you typed, finished; 6 has known, did they meet, were; 7 Have you ever played, played; 8 wrote, have read.

**10** (Вариант ответов)

SA: Have you ever planted a tree? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: Where did you plant it? SB: I planted it in my garden.  
SA: Have you ever sung in a choir? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: When did you sing in it?  
SB: I sang in a choir when I was at school.  
SA: Have you ever saved your money? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: Why did you save it?  
SB: Because I wanted to buy a new bicycle.  
SA: Have you ever met a politician? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: Who did you meet? SB: I met the Prime Minister.  
SA: Have you ever travelled by boat? SB: Yes, I have.  
SA: When did you travel?  
SB: I travelled by boat last summer.

**11** 2 was, 3 got, 4 have had, 5 started, 6 asked, 7 was, 8 broke out, 9 was, 10 managed, 11 made, 12 have met, 13 have had, 14 have bought, 15 broke down, 16 have just informed, 17 hit.

**12** 2 have been, 3 have done, 4 saw, 5 got, 6 moved, 7 did you move, 8 haven't unpacked, 9 phoned, 10 was, 11 was, 12 wanted.

**13** 2 brushed, went; 3 Have you ever seen, went; 4 haven't seen; 5 has gone; 6 hasn't played; 7 have already seen; 8 fell, broke; 9 have never heard; 10 has always wanted.

**14** 2 first time they have visited, 3 have not eaten out for, 4 Roger played, 5 has not been on holiday, 6 went to his country house.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 15** 1 We **bought** a new sofa last month.  
2 Jim **has lived** in Germany for three years.  
3 My father has **gone/been** fishing.  
4 She **has** just moved house.  
5 We **ate** lunch at one o'clock.  
6 Sophie has **done** her homework.  
7 Ann and Tim **got** married ten years ago.  
8 I **have been** at school since nine o'clock.
- 16** 2 had, 3 didn't come, 4 took, 5 were, 6 were waiting, 7 saw, 8 had, 9 found, 10 waited, 11 have recently recorded, 12 has become, 13 lasted, 14 am sending, 15 took, 16 were, 17 have heard, 18 are giving.

### Unit 5

- 1** 2 Robots will do most of the work. 3 People won't use electric cars. 4 Pollution will disappear. 5 People won't die of serious diseases. 6 Children won't stop going to school. 7 People will go on holiday to the moon.
- 2** 2 Shall we go for a walk? 3 Shall I make some tea?  
4 Shall I turn on the radio? 5 Shall we visit them?  
6 Shall I get a plaster?
- 3** 2 prediction, 3 offer, 4 on-the-spot decision, 5 request.
- 4** 2 Shall I go to the supermarket for you? 3 Will you pick up the children from school for me, please? 4 Shall we listen to that new CD? 5 Shall I book the tickets for you?  
6 Will you take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me, please?
- 7** 1 are; 2 will/'ll call, leave; 3 will/'ll write, is;  
4 will/'ll do, get; 5 will/'ll fix, comes; 6 will you pack;  
7 will not/won't do, are; 8 will you phone;  
9 will buy, return; 10 passes, will/'ll buy.
- 8** 2 is going to fall, 3 is going to explode,  
4 is going to rescue.
- 9** SA: Is Jennifer going to travel by train? SB: No, she isn't.  
SA: Is Mark going to travel by train? SB: Yes, he is.  
SA: Is Jennifer going to buy any souvenirs?  
SB: Yes, she is.  
SA: Is Mark going to buy any souvenirs? SB: Yes, he is.  
SA: Is Jennifer going to spend much money?  
SB: Yes, she is.  
SA: Is Mark going to spend much money?  
SB: No, he isn't.  
SA: Is Jennifer going to hire a car? SB: Yes, she is.  
SA: Is Mark going to hire a car? SB: No, he isn't.
- 10** 2 am/'m going to help, 3 Will you help, 4 shall I come,  
5 will/'ll probably phone, 6 will/'ll be, 7 Shall we go,  
8 is/'s going to rain.
- 11** 2 Shall, 3 will/'ll, 4 will/'ll, 5 Shall, 6 are/'re going to.
- 12** **A** He is going to sell his car. He is going to buy a bigger house. He is going to marry Susan. He is going to apply for a job with a law firm.  
**B** Mr Brown is coming to collect the car on Tuesday, 9th April. He's signing the contract for a new house on Wednesday, 10th April. He's having an interview with Mr Ford at 10 o'clock on Friday, 12th April. He's getting married on Sunday, 20th June.
- 13** 2 is going, 3 does the play start, 4 is having, 5 is singing, 6 leaves, 7 are moving, 8 does the ferry reach.
- 14** 1 will/'ll post, 2 is/'s going to walk, 3 is coming.
- 15** 1 **Shall** I take the children to the playground for you?  
2 I'll call you when I **finish** work.  
3 Will you **clean** the carpet, please?  
4 The film **starts** at 8 o'clock.  
5 Wait here until he **comes**.  
6 The Queen **won't attend** the parade tomorrow.
- 16** 2 have/'ve saved, 3 am/'m going to open, 4 owned, 5 has/'s given, 6 thinks, 7 will/'ll be, 8 has/'s already painted, 9 is/'s going to paint, 10 need, 11 wants, 12 am/'m still thinking, 13 will like, 14 am/'m starting, 15 will/'ll probably phone, 16 have.

### Revision 1

- 1** 2 I don't often drink tea in the morning.  
3 She usually washes the dishes after dinner.  
4 I rarely eat in restaurants.  
5 Do they often go for a walk on Sunday afternoons?  
6 Do you usually visit your grandparents on Saturdays?  
7 Mary is never late for meetings.  
8 They don't usually go abroad on holiday.
- 2** 2 leaves, 3 Are you going, 4 am/'m visiting, 5 lives, 6 live, 7 am/'m doing, 8 are you studying, 9 come, 10 am/'m working, 11 think, 12 Do you like, 13 love.
- 3** 2 was cleaning, was working, 3 found, was playing, 4 was having, came, 5 was knitting, was smoking, 6 arrived, was painting, 7 were walking, started, 8 were you talking, came, 9 was reading, knocked, 10 was washing, cut, 11 broke, was dusting, 12 was building, was swimming.
- 4** 2 began, 3 recorded, 4 went, 5 had, 6 stayed, 7 made, 8 thanked, 9 has been, 10 have started, 11 signed, 12 has already written, 13 has just announced, 14 has started.
- 5** 1 have been; 2 Have ... been to, has been;  
3 have gone; 4 has gone to.
- 6** 2 since, 3 for, 4 so far/already, 5 already, 6 yet, 7 yet, 8 already/just, 9 always, 10 ever, 11 never, 12 just/already.



7 1 go; 2 will not/won't be, have; 3 will go, finishes;  
4 arrive, will/'ll go; 5 will/'ll buy, sell; 6 get, will/'ll move.

8 2 C, 3 A, 4 B, 5 A, 6 B, 7 C, 8 A, 9 B.

9 1 Peter **is playing** football at the moment.  
2 My parents **bought** a new fridge yesterday.  
3 Sarah **has written** three letters so far today.  
4 I **go** to the gym every Tuesday.  
5 I expect I **will go** shopping on Saturday.  
6 **Will you come** with us tomorrow morning?  
7 **Have you seen** my dog? He's run away.  
8 Mandy will buy a car as soon as she **passes** her driving test.

## Unit 6

1 2 SA: Who was Volta? SB: He was the man who / that invented the electric battery.  
3 SA: Who was Columbus?  
SB: He was the man who/that discovered America.  
4 SA: Who was Von Zeppelin?  
SB: He was the man who/that built the first airship.  
5 SA: Who were the Kelloggs? SB: They were the men who/that made the first cornflakes.  
6 SA: Who was Cleopatra?  
SB: She was the woman who/that ruled Egypt.

2 3 A lawnmower is a machine which/that you use to cut grass. 4 A typewriter is a machine which/that you use to type letters. 5 A lion is an animal which/that lives in the jungle. 6 A photocopier is a machine which/that you use to make photocopies.

3 2 a, 3 f, 4 b, 5 e, 6 g, 7 c.

4 2 who/that **S** not omitted, 8 who/that **S** not omitted,  
3 which/that **O** omitted, 9 which/that **O** omitted,  
4 who/that **S** not omitted, 10 who/that **S** not omitted,  
5 which/that **O** omitted, 11 which/that **O** omitted,  
6 which/that **S** not omitted, 12 which/that **O** omitted.  
7 who/that **S** not omitted,

5 2 whose, 3 who's (has), 4 whose, 5 whose, 6 who's (is),  
7 who's (has), 8 whose, 9 whose, 10 who's (has).

6 2 a) who/that Max talked to was from Canada.  
b) Max talked to was from Canada.  
3 a) which/that Debbie is looking at is mine.  
b) Debbie is looking at is mine.  
4 a) which/that Anna is looking for belonged to her grandmother.  
b) Anna is looking for belonged to her grandmother.  
5 a) which/that Bob has gone to is near the Town Hall.  
b) Bob has gone to is near the Town Hall.  
6 a) who/that Sharon had dinner with was her lawyer.  
b) Sharon had dinner with was her lawyer.  
7 a) which/that they invited me to wasn't very exciting.  
b) they invited me to wasn't very exciting.

8 a) who/that I was talking to lives next door.  
b) I was talking to lives next door.

7 2 where, 3 why, 4 who, 5 when, 6 whose.

8 2 why, 3 who, 4 which, 5 where.

9 2 when, 3 where, 4 why, 5 when, 6 where, 7 why,  
8 which.

10 2 man whose dog often, 3 church where we got,  
4 shop where I bought, 5 man who lives in,  
6 the people whose daughter, 7 dog whose owner,  
8 girl who speaks, 9 magazine that I bought,  
10 boy who ran away, 11 hospital where I was,  
12 that Sophie found.

11 2 who/that **I** not omitted;  
3 , who is called Sarah, **NI** not omitted;  
4 which/that **I** not omitted; 5 whose **I** not omitted;  
6 which/that **I** omitted;  
7 , who is older than me, **NI** not omitted;  
8 , which is very old, **NI** not omitted;  
9 which/that **I** not omitted;  
10 , who is thirty years old, **NI** not omitted;  
11 who/that **I** not omitted;  
12 , which is very expensive, **NI** not omitted.

12 2 B, 3 A, 4 C, 5 C, 6 C, 7 A, 8 C, 9 B.

13 1 He's the man **who/that** writes songs for a lot of famous singers.  
2 Where's the book I bought last week?  
3 That's the woman **whose** house is made of glass.  
4 My sister, who is 10 years old, is called Betty.  
5 The reason **why** I was late was that I overslept.  
6 The man I was talking to is my uncle.  
7 That's the hotel **where** I spent my holidays last year.  
8 London, **which** is a big city, is the capital of England.

14 2 ordered, 3 were watching, 4 were sleeping,  
5 were getting, 6 appeared, 7 were carrying,  
8 threatened, 9 landed, 10 managed.

15 2 A, 3 C, 4 B, 5 A.

## Unit 7

1 2 SA: How long has Mary been teaching French?  
SB: She has been teaching French since 1990.  
3 SA: How long have the robbers been hiding in a farmhouse?  
SB: They have been hiding in a farmhouse for a week.  
4 SA: How long has Peter been making model planes?  
SB: He has been making model planes since 1992.  
5 SA: How long has Julie been playing the guitar?  
SB: She has been playing the guitar for four years.  
6 SA: How long have the children been watching TV?  
SB: They have been watching TV for two hours.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 2** 2 Has Jim been repairing, 3 have been reading, 4 Has Ben been swimming, 5 has been talking, 6 have been writing, 7 has not been doing, 8 has been staying, 9 have been working, 10 has been learning.
- 3** 2 a, 3 h, 4 b, 5 c, 6 d, 7 e, 8 g.
- 4** 2 My mum has been cooking for three hours. 3 The teams have been playing football for twenty minutes. 4 The headmaster has been speaking for two hours. 5 Bill has been building his house for six months. 6 I have been doing my homework for three hours.
- 5** (Вариант ответов)  
2 SA: Who is/s your best friend? SB: Alison.  
SA: How long have you known her?  
SB: I've known her for ten years.  
3 SA: What is/s your favourite TV programme?  
SB: The Travel Show.  
SA: How long have you been watching it?  
SB: I have been watching it for three years.  
4 SA: What is/s your address? SB: 21, South Grove.  
SA: How long have you lived/been living there?  
SB: I have lived/been living there since I was five years old.  
5 SA: What is/s your favourite magazine? SB: Teenclub.  
SA: How long have you been reading it?  
SB: I have been reading it for two years.
- 6** 2 has/s been exercising, 3 have/ve been playing, 4 has/s been working.
- 7** 2 have/ve been helping, 3 has/s been reading, 4 have/ve been writing, 5 have/ve been training, 6 Have you been lifting, 7 Has she been studying, 8 has/s been going.
- 8** 2 SA: Have people been listening to the radio since 1824?  
SB: No, they haven't. They've been listening to the radio since 1894.  
3 SA: Have people been riding bicycles since 1771?  
SB: No, they haven't. They've been riding bicycles since 1791.  
4 SA: Have people been travelling by plane since 1903?  
SB: Yes, they have.  
5 SA: Have people been printing books since 1450?  
SB: Yes, they have.  
6 SA: Have people been using fridges since 1836?  
SB: No, they haven't. They've been using fridges since 1856.  
7 SA: Have people been using light bulbs since 1868?  
SB: No, they haven't. They've been using light bulbs since 1878.  
8 SA: Have people been storing food in tins since 1709?  
SB: No, they haven't. They've been storing food in tins since 1809.
- 9** 2 has/s just gone, 3 has/s been learning, 4 have/ve known, 5 has/s painted, 6 has/s been sleeping,
- 10** A 2 have/ve looked, 3 have not/haven't found;  
B 1 have/ve been learning, 2 have/ve already learned;  
C 1 has/s been, 2 has/s painted, 3 has not/hasn't started.
- 11** 2 have/ve finished, 3 has/s just come out, 4 have given, 5 Have you decided, 6 have/ve been reading \*, 7 have not/haven't decided, 8 have/ve recently started, 9 have/ve been studying, 10 have/ve visited.  
\* ("over the last few weeks" – indicates duration)
- 12** 2 yet, 3 just, 4 always, 5 for, 6 How long, 7 already, 8 so far, 9 since, 10 ever.
- 13** 2 has been, 3 still have not/haven't finished, 4 since you last decorated, 5 still have not/haven't called.
- 14** 1 I have **been looking** for him all day. I can't find him.  
2 He has **been** trying to fix the car all morning.  
3 I have **bought** lots of food this week.  
4 I **haven't/have not** brought any shampoo.  
5 It has been **snowing**, but it's stopped now.  
6 How long **have they** been cleaning the house?  
7 I've **known** Lilian for two years.  
8 Have you **been crying**? Your eyes are red.
- 15** 2 don't know, 3 is cooking, 4 has been cooking, 5 has been mowing, 6 always works, 7 is doing, 8 has been studying, 9 never plays, 10 is reading, 11 is knitting, 12 has been knitting, 13 hate, 14 have been sitting.
- 16** A 2 are having/going to have, 3 doesn't know, 4 phoned, 5 asked, 6 will/is going to be;  
B 1 writes, 2 is writing, 3 will/is going to write;  
C 1 have had, 2 was, 3 escaped, 4 found, 5 was, 6 has not/hasn't done.

## Unit 8

- 1** 2 themselves, 3 herself, 4 himself, 5 yourself, 6 himself, 7 herself.
- 2** 2 j, 3 a, 4 g, 5 c, 6 b, 7 d, 8 f, 9 h, 10 i.
- 3** 2 each other, 3 each other, 4 themselves, 5 yourself/yourselves.
- 4** 2 myself, 3 herself, 4 ourselves, 5 themselves.
- 5** 2 himself, 3 themselves, 4 himself, 5 herself, 6 themselves.
- 6** 2 myself, 3 himself, 4 himself, 5 herself, 6 themselves, 7 myself, 8 yourselves, 9 ourselves, 10 themselves, 11 herself, 12 yourself.
- 7** 2 These are both rabbits. Both of them are rabbits. They are both rabbits.



- 3 These are all coins. All of them are coins. They are all coins. 4 These are all shopping bags. All of them are shopping bags. They are all shopping bags. 5 These are all candles. All of them are candles. They are all candles. 6 These are both keys. Both of them are keys. They are both keys. 7 These are both boys. Both of them are boys. They are both boys.
- 8 2 Both of us, 3 neither of us, 4 neither of them, 5 Both of them, 6 both of them.
- 9 2 both, 3 all, 4 none, 5 both, 6 Neither.
- 10 2 neither, both; 3 none; 4 All; 5 both; 6 all; 7 both, neither.
- 11 2 Both Jenny and Mark are from Ireland.  
3 Neither Marie nor I like bananas./Neither I nor Marie likes bananas.  
4 Neither Jane nor her sister goes to school any more.  
5 Both my mother and I enjoy skiing.  
6 Neither Lucy nor Bob spent their holidays at home.  
7 Both Susan and Emily went on holiday to Spain last year.  
8 Neither Fred nor Stuart has got long hair.
- 12 Neither businessmen nor pilots spend much time with their families.  
Both businessmen and pilots earn a lot of money.  
Neither businessmen nor pilots have much free time.  
Both businessmen and pilots meet a lot of people.  
Both businessmen and pilots make important decisions.  
Both businessmen and pilots have stressful jobs.
- 13 (ВАРИАНТ ОТВЕТОВ)  
**Both businessmen and pilots earn a lot of money, but neither businessmen nor pilots spend much time with their families or have much free time.**  
**Both businessmen and pilots meet a lot of people and make important decisions.**  
**Both businessmen and pilots have stressful jobs.**
- 14 2 the top of the hill, 3 the roof of the car,  
4 the owner of the shop, 5 the boys' caps,  
6 the manager of the hotel, 7 the man's trousers,  
8 the children's toys, 9 the name of the street,  
10 the baby's clothes.
- 15 2 hours', 3 today's, 4 yesterday's, 5 week's, 6 year's,  
7 five minutes', 8 month's.
- 16 2 it's (it is), 3 it's (it has), 4 its, 5 It's (It is), 6 it's (it has),  
7 It's (It is), 8 its.
- 17 2 Julie and Helen's pencils, 3 Mary's and Doug's hats,  
4 Tom and Jill's toys, 5 Paul's shirts, 6 Susan's shoes.
- 18 1 I, We, our, us; 2 they, mine; 3 They, They, my, them;  
4 We, you, it, it, us, it; 5 I, I, I, you, my, I, your, I, you, It,  
yourself; 6 them, they, you, they; 7 you, us, I; 8 himself,  
He, him.
- 19 2 Our, hers, 3 My, 4 theirs, 5 their, 6 mine, 7 Hers,  
8 her, 9 yours, 10 your.
- 20 1 Neither Nora nor Peter **enjoyed** the party. 2 This is **our** dog. 3 Neither Andy **nor** Jane lives in Scotland.  
4 This is **Fred's** watch. 5 We enjoyed **ourselves** on holiday last year. 6 Is this **his** suitcase? 7 These are **John's** slippers. 8 Jim, Bob and Tim are **all** doctors.
- 21 2 liked, 3 lived, 4 was looking, 5 found, 6 became,  
7 has just retired, 8 is enjoying, 9 works, 10 does,  
11 was working.
- 22 2 B, 3 A, 4 A, 5 C, 6 B.

## Unit 9

- 1 You mustn't go to the office for three days.  
You must take some medicine.  
You must drink a lot of water.  
You mustn't eat any ice-cream.  
You must take your temperature twice a day.  
You must call me if you have a high temperature.
- 2 2 SA: Why did she go to the post office yesterday?  
SB: Because she had to post some letters.  
3 SA: Why did they call the babysitter yesterday?  
SB: Because they had to attend a meeting.  
4 SA: Why did he call a taxi yesterday?  
SB: Because he had to go to the airport.  
5 SA: Why did she buy a dictionary yesterday?  
SB: Because she had to translate a novel.  
6 SA: Why did they go to a restaurant yesterday?  
SB: Because they had to entertain some clients.
- 3 2 won't have to, 3 didn't have to, 4 don't have to,  
5 doesn't/won't have to, 6 doesn't have to,  
7 didn't have to, 8 doesn't have to,  
9 don't/won't have to, 10 doesn't have to.
- 4 2 needn't/don't have to, 3 mustn't, 4 needn't/don't  
have to, 5 mustn't, 6 mustn't, 7 needn't/don't have to,  
8 needn't/don't have to.
- 5 2 must not/mustn't take pictures, 3 you have to leave,  
4 needn't go, 5 must not/mustn't keep pets, 6 do not/  
don't have to water.
- 6 SA: They can't go out in the evenings now.  
SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to go out  
in the evenings.  
SA: They can't do lots of sports now. SB: When the  
children grow up, they'll be able to do lots of sports.  
SA: They can't visit their friends often now.  
SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to visit  
their friends often.  
SA: They can't go to the theatre with their friends now.  
SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to go to  
the theatre with their friends.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 7** 2 were able to, 3 can, 4 Could, 5 was able to, 6 couldn't, 7 were able to, 8 can't.
- 8** 2 could, 3 couldn't, 4 was able to, 5 was able to, 6 could/was able to.
- 9** 2 C, 3 B, 4 B, 5 C, 6 C, 7 A, 8 C, 9 C, 10 B.
- 10** 2 lack of ability, 3 asking for permission, 4 suggestion, 5 request, 6 request, 7 request.
- 11** 2 You can't smoke here. 3 You can park here. 4 You can cross the road here. 5 You can't ride a bicycle here. 6 You can have coffee here.
- 12** 1 can't (refusing permission), 2 can (giving permission), 3 could (ability in the past), 4 can't (lack of ability), can/could (suggestion), 5 Could (request), 6 can (ability), can (ability), 7 can/could (suggestion), 8 Can/Could (request), 9 Can/Could (request).
- 13** 2 must, 3 must, 4 can't, 5 must, 6 can't.
- 14** 1 You **can't** go out until you finish eating. 2 Dad, **can** I borrow the car, please? 3 I haven't **been** able to write the letter yet. 4 He **couldn't** run long distances when he was a boy. 5 You **needn't** wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. 6 He drives a Porsche. He **can't** be poor.
- 15** 2 is looking, 3 has lived, 4 wants, 5 has decided, 6 has looked, 7 didn't like, 8 is going to see/ is seeing, 9 will like, 10 has already seen, 11 is/was.
- 5 cheap enough (for you) to buy.  
6 old enough to walk to school alone.  
7 rich enough to buy a luxury yacht.  
8 is light enough (for you) to lift.
- 10** 2 c, 3 a, 4 g, 5 d, 6 b, 7 f.
- 11** 2 playing, 3 to sleep, 4 get up, 5 spending, 6 running, 7 wash, 8 learning/to learn, 9 to see, 10 to stop.
- 12** 2 to try, 3 starting, 4 riding, 5 being, 6 to go, 7 to try, 8 to do, 9 coming, 10 to go, 11 visiting, 12 returning.
- 13** 1 helping, to do, 2 to get, to find, looking after, working, 3 to catch, stealing, to hear, 4 go, ice-skating, roller-skating, 5 having/to have, go, to go, love, arrange, 6 to marry, looking, 7 going, planning, visiting, to ask, to do.
- 14** 2 (for you) to exercise, 3 too late to catch, 4 interesting enough (for me) to.
- 15** 1 I'm **too short/not tall enough** to reach the top cupboard. 2 He is **fast enough** to win the race. 3 I'm old enough **to travel** alone. 4 You must **get up** now. 5 She suggested **going** to the cinema on Friday night. 6 He promised to send me a postcard. 7 It's no use **trying** to change her mind. 8 She knocked before **opening** the door. 9 He is **too tired** to come to the party. 10 I am **too poor/not rich enough** to buy a new sports car.
- 16** 2 A, 3 A, 4 B, 5 C, 6 C, 7 B, 8 A, 9 A, 10 A.

### Unit 10

- 1** 2 T.I. 3 B.I. 4 B.I. 5 T.I. 6 T.I. 7 T.I. 8 T.I. 9 B.I. 10 T.I. 11 T.I. 12 B.I. 13 T.I. 14 T.I. 15 B.I. 16 T.I.
- 3** 2 to post, 3 help, 4 to climb, 5 wash, 6 to stay, 7 to open, 8 go, 9 ask, 10 take.
- 4** 2 ... want them to leave now. 3 ... her to eat her dinner. 4 ... him to visit Aunt Linda. 5 ... you to talk to strangers. 6 ... Fiona to go on holiday by herself. 7 ... them to do their homework now. 8 ... you to go to bed now.
- 5** 2 tell, 3 make, 4 to be, 5 leave, 6 to meet.
- 6** 2 to come, 3 ask, 4 to help, 5 to decorate, 6 have, 7 to make, 8 know.
- 7** 2 d, 3 a, 4 b, 5 h, 6 e, 7 c, 8 g.
- 8** 2 it isn't cheap enough. 3 it's too small. 4 they're too heavy. 5 it's loud enough. 6 he's too short.
- 9** 2 hot enough to go to the beach. 3 too early to go to the party. 4 tall enough to touch the ceiling.
- 1** 2 A washing-machine is a machine which washes clothes. 3 Bell was the man who invented the telephone. 4 Zebras are animals which have got stripes. 5 A vacuum cleaner is a machine which cleans carpets. 6 Jackie Kennedy was the woman who married Aristotle Onassis.
- 2** 2 B, 3 A, 4 B, 5 B, 6 C, 7 C, 8 A.
- 3** 2 I, them; 3 his; 4 yourselves; 5 They, us; 6 hers, 7 herself; 8 yours.
- 4** 2 Both Samantha and Eric go shopping on Saturdays. 3 Neither Brian nor Simon plays football. 4 Both Peter and Sally are good dancers. 5 Neither David nor Linda knows how to drive. 6 Neither Jane nor I like carrots.
- 5** 2 A, 3 C, 4 C, 5 B, 6 C.
- 6** 2 to have, 3 to go, 4 to put up, 5 to see, 6 putting up, 7 making/to make, 8 swimming, 9 walking, 10 Camping.
- 7** 2 enough, 3 too, 4 too, 5 enough, 6 too.



- 8** 2 are not/aren't old enough to, 3 not cheap enough for him, 4 too shocked to say, 5 tall enough, 6 always nice to meet, 7 was too excited to.
- 9** 1 haven't seen; 2 Are you doing, am/I'm staying, am/I'm; 3 Did Steve phone, didn't phone, will/I'll probably give; 4 Are, am, are you doing, am/I'm studying; 5 have/ve been working; 6 Have you ever been, went, have/ve never been; 7 have you lived, have/ve been living/have/ve lived; 8 Have/ve you posted, did; 9 have/ve just cut; 10 went, Was, enjoyed.
- 10** 1 He is the man **whose** daughter won the competition. 2 I want **him** to help me in the garden. 3 Did you hear him **shout**? 4 We went to the bakery **to buy** some bread. 5 Would you like me **to do** the washing-up? 6 When **did you meet** her? 7 He is tired because he **has been painting** the gate since this morning. 8 It's not worth **waiting** any more.
- 6** SA: Had they locked the house before they left?  
SB: Yes, they had.  
SA: Had they left the car at the garage before they left?  
SB: No, they hadn't.  
SA: Had they booked a hotel room before they left?  
SB: No, they hadn't.  
SA: Had they set the burglar alarm before they left?  
SB: Yes, they had.  
SA: Had they fed the cat before they left?  
SB: Yes, they had.  
SA: Had they phoned the neighbours before they left?  
SB: No, they hadn't.
- 7** 1 2 was, 3 was watching, 4 broke out, 5 did it happen, 6 had dropped;  
2 1 Did you go, 2 went, 3 Did you have, 4 was sunbathing, 5 started, 6 left;  
3 1 lost, 2 did you lose, 3 went, 4 realised, 5 had left.
- 8** 2 Had you been waiting, 3 had been looking, 4 had been watching, 5 had been sunbathing, 6 had been working, 7 had been living.
- 9** 2 had been playing, 3 had been waiting, 4 had been working, 5 had been sitting, 6 had been discussing.
- 10** 1 2 had been standing, 3 had escaped;  
2 1 had done, 2 had planned, 3 had been waiting.
- 11** A 2 took, 3 sat, 4 left, 5 hadn't caught;  
B 1 was, 2 had forgotten, 3 got, 4 was;  
C 1 had, 2 got up, 3 had finished, 4 had;  
D 1 went, 2 had, 3 got, 4 realised, 5 had forgotten, 6 went.
- 12** 2 had had, 3 had eaten, 4 had only been driving, 5 had left, 6 had locked, 7 had been trying/had tried, 8 had been calling/had called.
- 13** 1 she, 2 to, 3 been, 4 to, 5 did, 6 not, 7 it, 8 blouse, 9 not/never, 10 not.
- 14** 2 B, 3 A, 4 B, 5 B, 6 A, 7 C, 8 A, 9 A, 10 B.

## Unit 11

- 1** 2 Had Lucy packed, 3 had finished, 4 Had Julie typed, 5 had not/hadn't finished, 6 had done, 7 had not/hadn't repaired, 8 had not/hadn't been.
- 2** 2 She had put up the decorations. 3 She had baked a cake. 4 She had cleaned the house. 5 She had sent the invitations. 6 She had borrowed some CDs.
- 3** 2 a (first action: her husband had forgotten her birthday), 3 e (first action: the bank robbers had escaped), 4 b (first action: we had bought the tickets), 5 d (first action: she had won the prize).
- 4** a) **After/When** Bob **had eaten** the meal, he **paid** the bill. b) Bob **had eaten** the meal **before** he **paid** the bill.  
a) **After/When** Mary **had read** the contract, she **signed** it. b) Mary **had read** the contract **before** she **signed** it.  
a) **After/When** the boys **had watched** the match, they **turned off** the TV. b) The boys **had watched** the match **before** they **turned off** the TV.  
a) **After/When** Peter **had borrowed** some money, he **bought** a car. b) Peter **had borrowed** some money **before** he **bought** a car.
- 5** 2 When I had found a solution to my problem, I felt happier./I felt happier when I had found a solution to my problem. 3 The boys had finished their homework before they went out to play. 4 The phone rang after he had locked the door./After he had locked the door, the phone rang. 5 Sarah had washed the dishes by the time her husband arrived./By the time her husband arrived, Sarah had washed the dishes. 6 The fans left the stadium when the concert had finished./When the concert had finished, the fans left the stadium. 7 The play had already started when Henry arrived at the theatre./When Henry arrived at the theatre, the play had already started.
- 1** 2 may not cut, 3 may be, 4 may not buy, 5 may not visit, 6 may enjoy, 7 may cook, 8 may leave, 9 may come.
- 2** 2 might, 3 must, 4 might, 5 must, 6 mustn't, 7 Could, 8 must.
- 3** You shouldn't talk all the time.  
You should wash the dishes.  
You should tidy your room.  
You shouldn't eat lots of chocolate.  
You shouldn't argue with your sisters.  
You should put your clothes away.  
You should take the dog for a walk.

## Unit 12



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 4** 2 How much shall we, 3 How shall we, 4 Who shall we, 5 When shall we, 6 What shall we, 7 What shall we, 8 Where shall we.
- 5** Will you take the rubbish out? Will you feed the baby? Will you water the plants? Will you put all the toys away? Will you iron the clothes?
- 6** 2 You mustn't take ..., 3 Mark may/might/could be ..., 4 Shall I make ..., 5 You should/ought to/must leave ..., 6 Emily was able to find ..., 7 Paul can't be ..., 8 We have to/must take ..., 9 The children can't be ..., 10 We may/might/could go ...
- 7** 2 C, 3 A, 4 C, 5 B, 6 A, 7 C, 8 A, 9 C, 10 B, 11 A, 12 A, 13 B.
- 8** 2 You have to/should/ought to be careful with the flowers. 3 You don't have to sign the paper now. 4 We could go to the cinema tonight. 5 You ought to call them now. 6 Could I talk to you for a minute?
- 9** 2 f, 3 e, 4 b, 5 a, 6 d.
- 10** 2 must, 3 haven't been able to, 4 may, 5 might, 6 won't have to, 7 Should, 8 should, 9 Could.
- 11** 2 Was ... able to; 3 must; 4 mustn't/shouldn't/ought not to; 5 needn't/don't have to; 6 ought to/should/have to/must, have to; 7 may/might/could; 8 shall, could/can; 9 can, can; 10 should/ought to; 11 May.
- 12** 2 can't be, 3 Shall we watch, 4 must be, 5 ought to stop eating, 6 may be in the, 7 must come from Spain./must be Spanish.
- 13** 2 You ought to/should/must ..., 3 Can/Could I ..., 4 Could/Can you ..., 5 He may/might/could ..., 6 You/We could/can ..., 7 Could/Can/Will you ...
- 14** 1 **Shall** we visit Mary and Tony tonight? 2 I'm not sure where Ed is. He **might/may/could** be at work. 3 **Shall** I help you wash the dishes? 4 You **needn't/don't have to** get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday. 5 Martha had a bad cold but she **was able to** do all her work at the office. 6 You **should** go to the dentist if you have toothache. 7 **Can/Could/May** I borrow your pen, please? 8 I **could** climb trees when I was young.
- 15** **A** 2 to swim, 3 to go; **B** 1 to find, 2 seeing.
- 16** 2 C, 3 A, 4 B, 5 B, 6 A, 7 B, 8 C.
- Unit 13**
- 1** 2 A lot of rice is eaten in India. 3 Snails are eaten in France. 4 Coca Cola is produced in the USA. 5 Coffee is grown in Brazil. 6 Beer is produced in Germany.
- 2** 2 a, 3 f, 4 b, 5 e, 6 c, 7 g, 8 h.
- A: Who was the 'Mona Lisa' painted by?  
B: It was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.  
A: Who was the Eiffel Tower built by?  
B: It was built by Gustave Eiffel.  
A: Who was 'Jurassic Park' directed by?  
B: It was directed by Steven Spielberg.  
A: Who was 'Carmen' composed by?  
B: It was composed by Georges Bizet.  
A: Who was Alexandria founded by?  
B: It was founded by Alexander the Great.  
A: Who was America discovered by?  
B: It was discovered by Christopher Columbus.  
A: Who was the telephone invented by?  
B: It was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.
- 3** 4 SA: Have they repaired the photocopier?  
SB: Yes, it has already been repaired.  
4 SA: Have you typed last month's reports?  
SB: No, they haven't been typed yet.  
5 SA: Have you placed the advertisement in the newspaper?  
SB: No, it hasn't been placed yet.  
6 SA: Have you paid the bills?  
SB: Yes, they have already been paid.
- 4** c The plants had been watered.  
d The carpet had been hoovered.  
e The cat had not been fed.  
f The dinner had not been cooked.  
g The rubbish had been taken out.  
h The windows had not been cleaned.
- 5** 2 was recently asked/have recently been asked;  
3 will be delivered; 4 was informed; 5 is being repaired;  
6 be typed; 7 is looked after; 8 were painted; 9 are washed, are dried; 10 is being serviced; 11 had already been posted; 12 will be punished; 13 was given; 14 have just been moved; 15 has been promoted.
- 6** 2 Dinner hasn't been made by the chef.  
3 A dinosaur egg has been found by an explorer.  
4 The baby will be looked after by Mrs Gates.  
5 He won't be taken home (by them) after the party.  
6 The front door was left open.  
7 The window wasn't broken by Jenny.  
8 The computer is being used.  
9 He was taught to drive by his brother.  
10 English is spoken by many people.  
11 He had already been told by the doctor to go on a diet/to go on a diet by the doctor.  
12 A new book is being written by the author.
- 7** 2 Will the bedroom be decorated by Susan tomorrow?  
3 Was the ring found in the garden? 4 Is the picture being drawn by Tom? 5 Have the invitations been sent by Simon yet? 6 Had the door been repaired by Paul before he left for work?
- 8** 3 Who is the party going to be organised by?  
4 What was he stung by?



- 5 Who was this delicious turkey cooked by?  
 6 Who are these books published by?  
 7 What was the soldier killed by?

- 9 2 a Mary has been offered a watch by Fred.  
 b A watch has been offered to Mary by Fred.  
 3 a Tim is being sent an invitation by Lisa.  
 b An invitation is being sent to Tim by Lisa.  
 4 a I was brought some oranges.  
 b Some oranges were brought to me.  
 5 a I am going to be lent some money by Sonia.  
 b Some money is going to be lent to me by Sonia.  
 6 a I will be shown the new car by Jack.  
 b The new car will be shown to me by Jack.  
 7 a He was paid a lot of money for the job.  
 b A lot of money was paid to him for the job.
- 10 2 This saucepan can be used for cooking spaghetti.  
 3 My homework has to be finished tonight.  
 4 Your bedroom must be tidied.  
 5 These clothes ought to be put away.  
 6 The secretary was given some letters to type by the boss/by her boss to type.  
 7 This cake should be eaten immediately.  
 8 Peter was sent a birthday card by Sally.  
 9 The dog must be taken for a walk.  
 10 The mouse is not being chased by the cat.  
 11 Is oil produced in Spain?  
 12 Was he bitten by a dog?  
 13 A new song has not been recorded by Edward.
- 11 I was sent a bunch of flowers. They were delivered to my house by the man from the flower shop. I was told that they were a present. They had been ordered by a young man. No card had been put in the flowers. I still don't know who they were sent by.
- 12 A fire was started in the Courtney National Park early yesterday morning. A match and some petrol had been used to start the fire. A lot of trees had been burnt (by the fire) before the fire brigade was called. A man has been arrested (by the police). He is still being questioned.
- 13 2 are being planted, 3 was being chased,  
 4 has not/hasn't been cleaned, 5 had been eaten,  
 6 must be finished, 7 was sent, 8 should be informed.
- 14 2 is taken, 3 is driven, 4 goes, 5 are carried, 6 buys,  
 7 needs, 8 has been invited, 9 will be held/is being held,  
 10 is looking forward.
- 15 1 The dishes **have** been washed.  
 2 The letters **are opened** every morning in the office.  
 3 Your homework must **be** finished by Monday.  
 4 The woman **was** seen taking the children to school.  
 5 Mike has been **told** about the new job.  
 6 The cars **were stolen** from the car park.  
 7 The house **has** been decorated recently.  
 8 The centre will **be visited** by the King next month.

- 16 2 A, 3 A, 4 C, 5 A, 6 B, 7 C, 8 B.

## Unit 14

- 1 A 2 said, 3 told, 4 said, 5 told, 6 tell;  
 B 1 said, 2 said, 3 tell, 4 said;  
 C 1 said, 2 said, 3 said.
- 2 2 he, his; 3 they, their; 4 his, him; 5 he, his;  
 6 he, me, his, him.
- 3 2 He said (that) they were working in the garden.  
 3 She told us (that) they had got married six months before. 4 He said (that) he would go shopping the following/next day. 5 He said (that) he had bought a new car the previous week/the week before. 6 They said (that) they weren't doing anything the next/following week. 7 She told me (that) she couldn't go out that night. 8 He said (that) he had forgotten to pay the bill. 9 She told me (that) they had brought me a present. 10 She told Peter (that) she would phone him the following/next day/the day after.
- 4 3, 6, 8 and 12 do not change tense because they are general truths.  
 5 does not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple.
- 2 Rose said (that) she had put the washing in the washing machine. 3 He said (that) a giraffe is bigger than a mouse. 4 She said (that) they hadn't seen Tom for two weeks. 5 She says (that) she hasn't phoned her uncle since last month. 6 The student said (that) birds can fly. 7 She said (that) he was studying for an exam then/at that time. 8 He said (that) leaves fall from the trees in autumn. 9 They said (that) they had visited the circus the previous weekend/the weekend before. 10 Tony said (that) she had dropped the vase on the floor. 11 She said (that) he had taken the money to the bank that morning. 12 The teacher said (that) the earth moves round the sun.
- 5 2 She asked George when he would call her.  
 3 She asked if/whether I could play the piano.  
 4 He asked who was there. 5 She asked Jonathan if/whether he liked fish. 6 Mother asked what I had done that day. 7 Jim asked if/whether I had gone to work the previous day/the day before. 8 He asked how I had got there. 9 She asked if/whether I had seen her blue jacket anywhere. 10 He asked if/whether I would take him to work the following/next day/the day after. 11 She asked where I had been. 12 She asked if/whether they would visit us in the summer.
- 6 2 who had called the fire brigade. 3 if/whether we/they had asked people to leave the building. 4 if/whether anyone had been injured. 5 how many fire-fighters were there then/at that time. 6 if/whether any of the houses had been damaged.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 7** 2 told, 3 asked, 4 ordered, 5 begged.
- 8** 2 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to stand back.  
3 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to bring the light nearer.  
4 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to pass him an axe.  
5 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to go to the other side of the plane.
- 9** 2 The shop assistant told the child not to touch anything.  
3 The secretary asked me to wait there.  
4 She suggested going swimming.  
5 The park keeper told them not to walk on the grass.  
6 He told them not to stay out late that night.  
7 Annie begged Barry to help her.
- 10** 2 He asked Jill to get him a glass of water.  
3 She refused to help Jim.  
4 Her mother promised to buy her something nice for her birthday.  
5 He warned us not to play near the road because it was dangerous.  
6 She offered to do the shopping.  
7 She begged her parents not to leave her alone in the dark.  
8 He suggested going to the cinema that night.  
9 His father ordered him to go to bed at once/immediately.  
10 They suggested watching a video.
- 11** 2 Alison offered to help organise the meeting.  
3 Alex offered to give them copies of the plan.  
4 Bob suggested doing some research on the subject.  
5 Nick promised to give them all the details the following week.  
6 Diana warned them not to decide until they knew the cost.
- 12** (Вариант ответов)  
2 Sarah said to me, 'I'm looking for a new job.'  
3 Brian asked, 'What time does the train to Leeds leave?'  
4 She said, 'I don't like jogging.'  
5 'I'll be back tomorrow,' he said.  
6 He asked, 'How much did your new car cost?'  
7 'Can you do the shopping for me, please?' I asked Marie.  
8 Jill said to Roy, 'Please close the window.'
- 13** (Вариант ответов)  
2 He asked her why she had done that.  
3 'Titanic is the best film I've ever seen,' Susie said to her mother.  
4 'Put the rubbish in the bin,' he said to them.  
5 He asked her to answer the telephone.  
6 'We're going to Hawaii for our honeymoon,' Alex said.  
7 Ben asked me if/whether I was going out on Saturday night.  
8 'I've never ridden a horse before,' said Adam.  
9 Mother said that we would go to the circus the following day.  
10 'Pick up the paper from the floor,' Mr Carter said to them.  
11 'Please, please let me go to the party,' Julia asked her parents.  
12 Greg suggested having a party on his birthday.
- 14** (Вариант ответов)  
'Can you give me your phone number, please?' she asked me. 'Call me very soon,' I said to her.
- 15** 1 He asked me **where** the post office **was**. 2 She suggested **visiting** the zoo. 3 Mother said, 'You must always **tell** the truth.' 4 The doctor told me **not to** exercise a lot. 5 My parents offered **to give** me a lift to the railway station. 6 Our teacher **told us** that the test was quite easy. 7 She asked how **she could** contact me. 8 He said that Kate had left **the previous month/ the month before**. 9 The old man **said** good night and went to bed. 10 Jenny said **to** me, 'I hate Maths.'
- 16** 2 Have you done, did; 3 myself; 4 enough; 5 used to; 6 needn't; 7 have been washing; 8 was written; 9 whose; 10 Shall, will; 11 which; 12 used to.

## Unit 15

- 1** 2 If you go to Rome, you can see the Colosseum.  
3 If you go to New York, you can see the Empire State Building.  
4 If you go to Paris, you can see the Eiffel Tower.  
5 If you go to Egypt, you can see the Pyramids.  
6 If you go to Sydney, you can see the Sydney Opera House.  
7 If you go to Venice, you can see some gondolas.  
8 If you go to Hawaii, you can see some palm trees.
- 2** 2 a – If you are hungry, make a sandwich.  
3 e – If you are bored, read a good book.  
4 b – If you are thirsty, get something to drink.  
5 d – If you are seasick, take one of these pills.
- 3** 2 If, 3 If, 4 unless, 5 unless, 6 unless, 7 if.
- 4** 2 does ... (exercise), 3 need, 4 Will ... be, 5 saves, 6 rains, 7 work (hard), 8 Will ... give, 9 (homework), ... won't let, 10 pay, 11 arrives (on time).
- 5** 1 will/'ll make, 2 leave, will/'ll get, 3 wash, will/'ll cook, 4 will/'ll go, have, 5 finish, will/'ll give, 6 look, will/'ll find.
- 6** 3 Sarah will be disappointed unless you send her a birthday card. 4 Maria won't go to the theatre unless Peter goes with her. 5 Unless you pay the electricity bill, it will be cut off. 6 If Kate doesn't come home soon, her parents will call the police. 7 Unless the children behave themselves, they won't go to the zoo. 8 If my mother doesn't offer to help me, I won't have time to make all the preparations. 9 If you don't tidy your room, I won't take you to the party. 10 Unless Dennis writes soon, I will be very upset.
- 7** 2 If a shop assistant was/were rude to me, I would complain to the manager. 3 If I fell over and broke my arm, I would go to hospital. 4 If I burnt my dinner, I would order a pizza. 5 If there was a power cut in my house, I would light some candles. 6 If I caught a bad cold, I would stay in bed.
- 8** 2 SA: Shall I order a salad or a sandwich?  
SB: If I were you, I'd order a salad.  
3 SA: Shall I have some coffee or some orange juice?  
SB: If I were you, I'd have some orange juice.



- 4 SA: Shall I buy a dog or a goldfish?  
SB: If I were you, I'd buy a goldfish.
- 5 SA: Shall I go to Japan or France?  
SB: If I were you, I'd go to Japan.
- 6 SA: Shall I take up golf or baseball?  
SB: If I were you, I'd take up golf.
- 9 2 had, would/could/might go, 3 would/could/might buy, had, 4 didn't cost, would/could buy, 5 would/could/might lend, asked, 6 would/could/might open, had, 7 would/could/might paint, had, 8 got, would/could/might go, 9 was/were, would never work, 10 would/could post, had.
- 10 ... he would have arrived in New York on time. If he had arrived in New York on time, he would have attended the meeting. If he had attended the meeting, he would have signed the contract. If he had signed the contract, his boss would have been pleased with him. If his boss had been pleased with him, she would have given him a promotion.
- 11 2 had remembered, would/could/might have sent; 3 hadn't been, could/would/might have gone; 4 would/might not have broken, had been; 5 would/could/might have got, hadn't taken; 6 had done, wouldn't/might not have shouted; 7 would/could/might have passed, had studied; 8 had closed, would/could/might not have run away; 9 would/could/might have lost, hadn't picked; 10 had saved, would/might/could have been able.
- 12 2 ... he wouldn't have fallen off (it). 3 If he hadn't fallen off the ladder, he wouldn't have broken his leg. 4 If he hadn't broken his leg, he wouldn't have gone to hospital. 5 If he hadn't gone to hospital, he wouldn't have met Linda (there). 6 If he hadn't met Linda, they wouldn't have fallen in love. 7 If they hadn't fallen in love, they wouldn't have got married (six months later).
- 13 2 were, would talk, 3 won, would/could buy, would buy/win, will buy, will buy, 4 had studied, wouldn't/might not have failed, 5 were/was, would go, 6 hadn't left, wouldn't/couldn't/might not have escaped, 7 hadn't been, wouldn't have missed, 8 would you go, could, could, would go, 9 were/was, would report, 10 had been, wouldn't have cut.
- 14 2 were/was, 3 would/could/might have had, 4 would give, 5 leave, 6 hadn't met, 7 would/might/could have been, 8 had, 9 phones, 10 would get.
- 15 2 If I cut some wood, I will be able to/can make a fire. (1)  
3 If I had some food, I wouldn't be hungry. (2)  
4 If I sit under a tree, I won't get wet. (1)  
5 If I get some water from the stream, I'll be able to/can have a drink. (1)  
6 If anyone could hear me, I would shout for help. (2)/  
No one will be able to hear me if I shout for help. (1)/  
No one would be able to hear me if I shouted for help. (2)  
7 If it wasn't/weren't dark, I would/might be able to/could find the path. (2)
- 16 I wish I didn't have a sore throat.  
I wish I could play outside in the snow.  
I wish I didn't have to take medicine.  
I wish I didn't have to stay in bed.  
I wish I could go to my friend's party tonight.  
I wish I some of my friends were here with me.
- 17 I wish the beach hadn't been a long way from the hotel.  
I wish the hotel hadn't been dirty. I wish my hotel room hadn't been small. I wish I hadn't lost my luggage.  
I wish my wallet hadn't been stolen.
- 18 2 I wish Mrs Parker's dog wouldn't bark all day. 3 I wish Mr Fox wouldn't mow the lawn at 5 am. 4 I wish Mrs Edison wouldn't leave rubbish on the pavement. 5 I wish the Smiths wouldn't have a party every weekend. 6 I wish Miss Brown wouldn't pick my flowers.
- 19 2 had seen, 3 had done, 4 would remember, 5 didn't have, 6 was/were, 7 hadn't cost, 8 could.
- 20 2 I wish I could remember the recipe.  
3 I wish I could find my umbrella.  
4 I wish I had remembered to lock the front door.  
5 I wish I wasn't on a diet. 6 I wish I had studied.  
7 I wish I had enough money to go on holiday.
- 21 2 wish you would stop; 3 were you, I would go; 4 wish you would.
- 22 1 I wish I **could** go home now. 2 If I were you, I **would** ask my father's advice. 3 Unless you **ask** her, she won't come. 4 I wish you **would** listen to me. 5 I wish I **had seen** the play when it was on at the theatre. 6 I wish I **could** go on long holidays to hot places. 7 If I **have** time, I will tidy up before I go out.
- 23 2 The silver was polished (by the maid) yesterday.  
3 The dog must be taken to the vet. 4 The new cinema will be opened (by the mayor) tomorrow (by the mayor).  
5 The fire couldn't be put out because of the wind.  
6 Has the washing been done yet?
- 24 2 A, 3 B, 4 C, 5 A, 6 A, 7 B, 8 A, 9 C, 10 A.

### Revision 3

- 1 2 B, 3 C, 4 B, 5 B, 6 A, 7 C, 8 A, 9 B, 10 C.
- 2 2 must not/mustn't go out, 3 may visit us, 4 must be, 5 Shall we go, 6 needn't go to work, 7 ought to look for.
- 3 2 He is being taken to hospital now. 3 Who will the speech be made by? 4 The flowers have been destroyed by the cat. 5 'Hamlet' was written by Shakespeare. 6 Susan was sent a red rose./A red rose was sent to Susan. 7 The house had been burned down (by the fire) by the time the fire brigade arrived.  
8 Who was the television invented by?



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 4** 2 had bought, 3 am wearing, 4 could go, 5 had, 6 had studied, 7 have, 8 hadn't spent, 9 wouldn't play, 10 am.
- 5** 2 A, 3 C, 4 A, 5 B, 6 C, 7 A, 8 A.
- 6** 2 Paul asked me to open the door for him.  
3 Anna suggested going ice-skating that weekend.  
4 He asked me what time it was. 5 Jonathan begged them not to go without him. 6 Amanda told me (that) she had found a new job. 7 Samantha promised to send Tim a postcard from Italy./Samantha told Tim (that) she would send him a postcard from Italy. 8 Mother said (that) she would bake a cake for the party./Mother promised to bake a cake for the party. 9 The fire-fighter warned/told the people not to go into the house.  
10 Brian refused to type the report. 11 She asked her father to give her a lift./She asked her father if he could give her a lift.
- 7** 2 reading, 3 to help, 4 doing, 5 arguing, 6 to keep, 7 borrow, 8 seeing, 9 laugh.
- 8** 2 why, 3 yours, 4 was built, 5 hadn't forgotten, 6 whose, 7 it, 8 has worked, 9 is living, 10 me, 11 was able to, 12 which, 13 see, 14 where, 15 Shall, 16 who.
- 10** 2 We went to Spain by plane. 3 She ran to work quickly.  
4 My dog sleeps peacefully in the garden every afternoon. 5 They were talking quietly in the kitchen.  
6 He played happily in his room all morning.  
7 They crossed the street carefully. 8 I went to work by taxi yesterday. 9 They never go to the beach in winter.  
10 He sometimes takes his children to the park.
- 11** 2 more expensive, most expensive;  
3 stronger, strongest; 4 more difficult, most difficult;  
5 more intelligent, most intelligent; 6 closer, closest;  
7 more popular, most popular; 8 safer, safest;  
9 more important, most important; 10 louder, loudest;  
11 weaker, weakest; 12 tastier, tastiest;  
13 more comfortable, most comfortable;  
14 more delicious, most delicious.
- 12** 2 harder, hardest; 3 faster, fastest;  
4 more noisily, most noisily; 5 earlier, earliest;  
6 more satisfactorily, most satisfactorily.
- 13** 2 Gold is more expensive than silver.  
3 Canada is colder than Brazil.  
4 Feathers are lighter than stones.  
5 A car is faster than a bicycle.

## Unit 16

- 1** 2 comfortable, 3 bright, 4 fresh, 5 excellent, 6 lovely, 7 tall, 8 quiet.
- 2** 2 oval, 3 generous, 4 thick, 5 long, 6 careful.
- 3** 2 some beautiful round china plates, 3 a blue Venetian crystal vase, 4 an expensive gold ring, 5 two old silver candlesticks, 6 a lovely antique wooden radio.
- 4** **-ly**: badly, quietly, carefully;  
~~Х~~ **= ly**: impossibly, horribly, simply;  
**согласная + Х = ily**: easily, noisily, lazily.
- 5** **Adjective**: good, cheap, tall, cold, wide, pretty.  
**Adverb**: nicely, well, sadly, strongly, softly, carefully, loudly.  
**Adjective and Adverb**: monthly, fast, early, late, hard.
- 6** **how**: quickly, slowly, cheerfully;  
**where**: here, there, somewhere, anywhere;  
**when**: last month, tomorrow, now, last week;  
**how often**: always, never, often, sometimes.
- 7** 2 carelessly, 3 angrily, 4 fluently, 5 heavily, 6 carefully, 7 politely, 8 quickly, 9 proudly, 10 seriously.
- 8** 2 good; 3 easy; 4 angrily, bad; 5 cheerful, good.
- 9** 2 loudly, 3 warm, 4 nice, 5 sincerely, 6 happily, 7 wonderful, 8 successful.
- 14** 2 Yes, it's the most frightening film I've ever seen.  
3 Yes, she's the most beautiful girl/woman I've ever met.  
4 Yes, it's the most delicious cheesecake I've ever tasted. 5 Yes, it's the worst record I've ever heard.
- 15** 2 narrower/more narrow, 3 quickest, 4 sooner, 5 taller, 6 most beautiful, 7 prettiest, 8 tastiest.
- 16** 2 the most carelessly of, 3 later than, 4 the most beautifully of, 5 the most clearly of, 6 more generously, than, 7 the hardest of, 8 better than.
- 17** 2 larger than – The Sahara desert is larger than the Gobi desert. 3 the heaviest – The blue whale.  
4 the longest – The Great Wall of China.  
5 higher than – Mount Everest is higher than Kilimanjaro. 6 the smallest – Australia. 7 faster than – The cheetah runs faster than the lion. 8 louder ... than – The blue whale makes a louder sound than the polar bear. 9 the tallest – The Petronas Twin Towers in Malaysia. 10 better ... than – A falcon has got better eyesight than a human.
- 18** 2 much, 3 very, 4 much, 5 very, 6 much.
- 19** 2 longer than, 3 more elegant, 4 the most expensive, 5 cheaper, 6 later than, 7 the best, 8 the most expensive.
- 20** 2 the most uncomfortable, 3 the hottest, 4 the biggest, 5 more enjoyable, 6 better.
- 21** (Вариант ответов)  
2 The bicycle, the motorbike; 3 The bicycle;  
4 The car, the bicycle; 5 The motorbike, the car;



6 The motorbike, the bicycle; 7 The motorbike, the car;  
8 The motorbike, the bicycle; 9 The motorbike;  
10 The bicycle; 11 The bicycle, the motorbike;  
12 The car, the bicycle; 13 The car; 14 The car.

**22** 2 have never seen such, 3 the most beautiful song,  
4 healthier than, 5 as old as, 6 is newer than,  
7 speak French as well as, 8 the warmest sweater,  
9 is as expensive as, 10 less handsome than.

**23** 1 B, 2 A, 3 C, 4 B, 5 A, 6 C, 7 A.

**24** 2 The old bridge is being repaired at the moment.  
3 The police had been informed about the planned robbery.  
4 The results will be announced early tomorrow morning.  
5 The film 'The Birds' was directed by Alfred Hitchcock.  
6 Your room must be cleaned more often.  
7 Clare was being followed while she was walking home.  
8 The entrance to the embassy is guarded twenty-four hours a day.

## Unit 17

**1** 2 babies, 3 watches, 4 tomatoes, 5 chairs, 6 keys,  
7 knives, 8 feet, 9 tall men, 10 roofs, 11 radios, 12 fast cars,  
13 lives, 14 parties, 15 beautiful days, 16 classes.

**2** / s /: myths, desks, hats, skirts, clocks, cliffs, shirts, roofs;  
/ iz /: cages, buses, churches, dresses, foxes, boxes, roses, dishes;  
/ z /: keys, flowers, apples, dolphins, chairs, babies, cherries, bags, pianos, onions, birds, balls, radios, songs.

**3** A 2 T-shirts, 3 cups, 4 glasses, 5 candlesticks;  
B 1 lion, 2 giraffes, 3 deer, 4 rhinos, 5 monkeys.

**4** 2 two tomatoes, 3 one onion, 4 two radishes,  
5 one cucumber.

**5** 2 C, 3 U, 4 C, 5 C, 6 U, 7 U, 8 C, 9 U, 10 C, 11 C, 12 U.

**6** 2 a, 3 some, 4 some, 5 some, 6 an, 7 an, 8 a, 9 some,  
10 some, 11 some, 12 some.

**7** 2 loaves/slices/pieces of bread,  
3 cups/packets of tea,  
4 bars of soap, 5 pieces/slices of pie,  
6 kilos/slices/pieces of meat,  
7 packets/cups/spoons of sugar,  
8 glasses/bottles/cups/bowls/jars of water.

**8** 2 cans, 3 packet, 4 jar, 5 tins, 6 bottle.

**9** 2 do, 3 is, 4 were, 5 are, 6 are, 7 are, 8 needs, 9 are,  
10 was, 11 were, 12 are, 13 are, 14 are, 15 were.

**10** 2 one, 3 one, 4 ones, 5 ones, 6 ones, 7 one.

**11** 2 a, 3 an, 4 a, 5 a, 6 an, 7 a, 8 an, 9 an, 10 a.

**12** 2 Tim is a mechanic. 3 Bob is a pilot. 4 Peter is an electrician.  
5 Fiona is an optician. 6 Sarah is a typist.  
7 Rick is a basketball player. 8 Annie is a photographer.

**13** 1 some, a; 2 an, 3 A, some; 4 some; 5 some;  
6 some, an.

**14** The / ðə /: box, boy, table, ship, helicopter, spoon, carpet.  
The / ðɪ /: octopus, artist, umbrella, antenna, egg, ant, object.

**15** 2 –; 3 the; 4 –; 5 –; 6 the; 7 The, the; 8 the.

**16** 2 the/a, 3 a, 4 a, 5 a, 6 a, 7 the, 8 the, 9 the, 10 the,  
11 the, 12 the.

**17** 2 the, 3 a, 4 a, 5 the, 6 the; 7 a, 8 the, 9 the, 10 the,  
11 a, 12 the, 13 a.

**18** 2 Melanie, 3 Europe, 4 President Clinton, 5 home,  
6 the Mayor, 7 the afternoon, 8 cat, 9 the violin,  
10 Swimming, 11 the Colosseum, 12 the Bridgeford.

**19** 1 We go **to bed** at 9 o'clock every night.  
2 Can you give me some **advice**, please?  
3 These trousers **are** very expensive.  
4 The police **are** here.  
5 Jonathan went **to Brazil** on holiday last year.  
6 There are a lot of **sheep** in that field.  
7 The news about the accident **was** shocking.  
8 My car is the red **one** which is parked outside.  
9 Aunt Lucy gave me a pair of **gloves** for my birthday.  
10 They play golf once **a** week.

**20** 2 B, 3 B, 4 C, 5 B, 6 C, 7 C, 8 A, 9 B.

**21** 2 It can't be a star. It must be a starfish.  
3 It can't be a coat-hanger. It must be an umbrella.  
4 It can't be a violin. It must be a guitar.  
5 It can't be a table. It must be a chair.  
6 It can't be a TV. It must be a computer.

## Unit 18

**1** SA: Is there any traffic in the picture?  
SB: No, there isn't.  
SA: Are there any children in the picture?  
SB: No, there aren't.  
SA: Is there any snow in the picture? SB: Yes, there is.  
SA: Are there any trees in the picture?  
SB: Yes, there are.  
SA: Is there any ice in the picture? SB: Yes, there is.  
SA: Are there any houses in the picture?  
SB: Yes, there are.  
SA: Is there any fog in the picture? SB: No, there isn't.

**2** 2 some, 3 any, 4 some, 5 no, 6 some, 7 some.

**3** 2 C, 3 C, 4 A, 5 B, 6 C, 7 A, 8 A, 9 C, 10 C.



## Grammarway 2 – Ответы к упражнениям

- 4** 2 anything, 3 any, 4 any, 5 Anywhere, 6 Anyone/Anybody.
- 5** 2 everything, 3 everywhere, 4 everyone/everybody, 5 everywhere, 6 every.
- 6** 2 lives, 3 knows, 4 is, 5 feels/is, 6 smells/is.
- 7** 2 anyone/anybody, 3 everywhere, 4 anywhere, 5 something, 6 Someone/Somebody, 7 anything.
- 8** 2 How much, 3 How many, 4 How much, 5 How many, 6 How many, 7 How much.
- 9** 2 many, 3 much, 4 a lot of, 5 many, 6 a lot of, 7 much, 8 a lot of, 9 many, 10 much.
- 10** 2 much, 3 many, 4 many, 5 a lot, 6 much, 7 a lot, 8 much, 9 a lot, 10 much.
- 11** 2 too many, 3 too much, 4 too many, 5 Too many, 6 too much, 7 too much.
- 12** a little honey, a few cars, a little ice-cream, a little milk, a few women, a few sheep, a little water, a few cups, a little flour, a few forks, a few babies, a little apple juice, a little pepper, a few dolls, a little marmalade, a few dresses.
- 13** 2 a few; 3 a little; 4 few; 5 little; 6 few; 7 a few; 8 little; 9 little; 10 a little; a few.
- 14** 2 too much; 3 any; 4 some; 5 everyone; 6 many, very few; 7 anywhere, somewhere; 8 everyone, nobody, some; 9 any.
- 15** 1 Could you lend me **some** money, please?  
2 How **much** time have we got left?  
3 There aren't **many** chocolates in the box.  
4 I don't know **anything** about chemistry.  
5 I'm looking for **something** in the cupboard.  
6 I want to go **somewhere** nice and quiet for my holidays. 7 I don't need **any** help with my homework.  
8 You can have **anything** you want. Just ask for it.  
9 Did you catch **any** fish in the river?  
10 Everybody **knows** that the earth is round.
- 16** 2 B, 3 C, 4 A, 5 A, 6 B, 7 B, 8 C.
- 3** 2 Will you finish this tomorrow?  
3 Did you remember to buy some eggs?  
4 Has George moved house yet?  
5 Can you help me clean the kitchen?
- 4** T: Are, T: Can, T: Do.
- 5** 2 Don't you know what the capital of Italy is?  
3 Don't you find him handsome?  
4 Haven't you ever swum in the sea?  
5 Can't you keep quiet while I'm on the phone?  
6 Didn't they know that the meeting was cancelled?  
7 Haven't you paid the bill yet?  
8 Aren't you taking the children with you?
- 6** 1 Which; 2 Which; 3 What, Which; 4 What, Which; 5 What, Which.
- 7** 2 What, 3 What, 4 How, 5 How, 6 What, 7 What, 8 How.
- 8** 2 long, 3 often, 4 many, 5 much, 6 far, 7 many, 8 often, 9 long.
- 9** 1 B, 2 Which C, 3 Which C, 4 Who B, 5 How many B.
- 10** 2 What time/When, 3 Whose, 4 How many, 5 Why, 6 Which, 7 What, 8 How often, 9 How much, 10 How long, 11 Where, 12 Who.
- 11** 2 Where, 3 How long, 4 When, 5 How many, 6 How much, 7 How, 8 Why.
- 12** 2 How often does Jane buy new clothes?  
3 Whose desk is this?/Whose is this desk?  
4 Are you going to his party?  
5 How far is it from your house to the cinema?  
6 When did you start work?  
7 What time/When do you go to bed?  
8 Why did you close the door?  
9 Did you go shopping yesterday?  
10 How much did your sunglasses cost?  
11 How many people were invited to Helen's wedding?  
12 Where does Jonathan work?
- 13** 2 A, 3 B, 4 A, 5 A, 6 A.
- 14** 2 Who did Paul meet? 3 Who is James seeing tomorrow? (NB: when see is used in continuous tenses it means 'visit'.) 4 Who has found a new job?  
5 What is Mum doing? 6 Who phoned Richard?  
7 What is she reading? 8 Who did they welcome?  
9 Who went on holiday with Joanne?  
10 What are they building? 11 Who does Helen like?  
12 Who lives with Bill?

## Unit 19

- 1** 2 Can he swim, too?  
3 Does Sharon like playing tennis, too?  
4 Did Mike read a book last week, too?  
5 Has Anne bought a new car, too?  
6 Are you wearing a red dress, too?
- 2** 2 Does, 3 Have, 4 Can, 5 Have, 6 Did.
- 15** 2 Who is Linda talking to? 3 What is he looking at?  
4 Who did Sandra buy a present for?  
5 Where does Paul come from?  
6 Who did the children go to the park with?  
7 Who did she borrow this dress from?  
8 What is Tim looking for?



- 16** 1 haven't you, won't you; 2 hasn't he, do you, have you; 3 didn't he, aren't they.
- 17** 2 isn't she, 3 haven't we, 4 does he, 5 have they, 6 doesn't he, 7 is she, 8 aren't they, 9 are we, 10 can't he, 11 is it, 12 didn't she, 13 aren't I, 14 did you.
- 18** 2 hasn't she, she has; 3 isn't he, he is; 4 does he, he doesn't; 5 don't they, they do; 6 haven't you, I have; 7 don't you, I don't; 8 isn't he, he isn't; 9 doesn't she, she does; 10 isn't it, it isn't; 11 don't you, we do; 12 doesn't she, she does.
- 19** 2 doesn't she ↗, 3 did he ↗, 4 are we ↗, 5 doesn't he ↘, 6 isn't she ↘, 7 didn't he ↗, 8 haven't they ↘, 9 isn't she ↗, 10 won't he ↘.
- 20** 1 Did she **return** from her trip to Paris?/Has she returned from her trip to Paris? 2 **Which** one do you like best? 3 Who **phoned** last night?/Who did **you** phone last night? 4 Did **they not** enjoy their journey? 5 You never drive at night, **do** you? 6 Let's go shopping, **shall** we? 7 There are lots of flowers, aren't **there**? 8 **Does** he know the answer? 9 **Where** are you going? 10 Who do you **live with**?
- 21** 2 He asked me if I could give him directions to the post office./He asked me to give him directions to the post office. 3 The boy said (that) he was going to the park that day. 4 Father told me (that) he would tidy the garden the following/next day/the day after. 5 John asked me to turn off the light.
- 22** 2 A, 3 C, 4 B, 5 C, 6 A, 7 A, 8 C, 9 B, 10 A.

## Unit 20

**1** (Вариант ответов)

- 2 at (I like going shopping with my friends.)  
3 at (I usually stay at home.)  
4 on (I usually go out with my friends.)  
5 on (I wear very warm clothes.)  
6 at (I am having an English lesson at the moment.)  
7 at (I usually go to bed at 10 o'clock at night.)  
8 in (No, I didn't.) 9 at (Yes, I usually do.)  
10 on (I usually visit my family.)
- 2** 2 on, 3 in, 4 in, 5 at, 6 at, 7 at, 8 On, 9 in, 10 On.
- 3** 2 At, 3 on, 4 in, 5 on, 6 on, 7 on, 8 at, 9 on.
- 4** 2 C, 3 B, 4 B, 5 B, 6 A, 7 B, 8 B.
- 5** 2 SA: When was Gandhi first put in prison?  
SB: He was first put in prison on March 10th, 1922.  
3 SA: When was the Acropolis built?  
SB: It was built in the 5th century BC.  
4 SA: When was the Mona Lisa painted?  
SB: It was painted in the 16th century.  
5 SA: When was the telephone invented?  
SB: It was invented in 1876.

- 6 SA: When was Mozart born?  
SB: He was born on January 27th, 1756.  
7 SA: When did Marilyn Monroe die?  
SB: She died on August 5th, 1962.  
8 SA: When did Neil Armstrong land on the moon?  
SB: He landed on the moon on July 20th, 1969.
- 6** 2 under, 3 in, 4 at, 5 on, 6 in, 7 opposite, 8 in, 9 beside, 10 near, 11 in, 12 between, 13 on, 14 at, 15 in.
- 7** 2 on, 3 in, 4 at, 5 On, 6 in, 7 next to/behind, 8 behind/next to, 9 on.
- 8** 2 next to/beside/near; 3 On; 4 under; 5 between; 6 on; 7 in; 8 in, in; 9 In; 10 Between.
- 9** 2 in front of, 3 Opposite, 4 under, 5 between, 6 near, 7 behind, 8 on.
- 10** 2 B, 3 C, 4 A, 5 A, 6 C, 7 C.
- 11** 2 through, 3 over, 4 from ... to, 5 round, 6 down, 7 out of/into, 8 up.
- 12** 2 down, 3 along, 4 behind, 5 on, 6 near, 7 out of, 8 Near, 9 on.
- 13** 1 The car is going **along** the street.  
2 Uncle Jim fell **down** the stairs yesterday.  
3 I live **at** 14, South Grove.  
4 The Eiffel Tower is **in** Paris.  
5 Let's have a party **next** Saturday.
- 14** 2 A, 3 B, 4 A, 5 A, 6 B, 7 C, 8 B, 9 A, 10 A.
- 15** 2 were you, I would; 3 wishes she had gone; 4 wish you would tidy; 5 if I don't have/haven't got; 6 had set.
- 16** 3 I was hungry, so I made a sandwich. 4 I had a party because it was my birthday. 5 I feel tired today because I went to bed late last night. 6 My clothes were dirty, so I washed them. 7 The food was burnt because she forgot to turn off the oven. 8 We were bored, so we went for a walk. 9 Jenny was late, so the boss was angry. 10 Frank went to the hairdresser's because his hair was too long.
- 17** 2 was reading, 3 had cleaned, 4 made, 5 see.
- 18** 2 although/even though, 3 In spite of/Despite, 4 in spite, of/despite, 5 although/even though, 6 in spite of/despite, 7 In spite of/Despite, 8 Although/Even though.
- 19** 2 ... is old, it's in good condition. 3 ... that it was snowing, we went out for a walk. 4 ... Sandra is short. 5 ... was a hot day, he wore a warm coat. 6 ... busy, he helped me with my homework. 7 ... over, she didn't hurt herself.
- 20** 2 a, 3 e, 4 b, 5 d.



### Revision 4

- 1** 2 A, 3 C, 4 B, 5 B, 6 A, 7 A, 8 C, 9 A, 10 C.
- 2** 1 must, mustn't; 2 mustn't, must; 3 Must, needn't, must; 4 must, must, needn't, must; 5 Must, needn't.
- 3** 2 You mustn't use, 3 Kelly may/might/could be, 4 Shall I call, 5 You ought to/should go, 6 Richard was able to buy, 7 Alex can't be, 8 Eric may/might have, 9 You needn't/don't have to do, 10 He must be.
- 4** 2 that/which/–, 3 who, 4 that/which/–, 5 when, 6 whose, 7 why.
- 5** 2 Sam was attacked on Saturday night.  
3 The beds are made every morning (by the maid).  
4 The letter will be written next week.  
5 The project had been finished (by Gary).  
6 The birthday cake is being baked by Catherine.  
7 Were the police informed by Alison?  
8 The burglars were being watched by the police.  
9 The dishes have to be washed before we go out.  
10 Your homework must be completed tonight.  
11 Their house may be painted this summer.  
12 Three languages are taught at that school.  
13 The car was being driven by Tara.  
14 Who was that poem written by?  
15 The kitchen was being tidied by Mrs Jefferson.  
16 Andrew is going to be offered a better post by the boss./A better post is going to be offered to Andrew by the boss.
- 6** 2 leave, 3 would not/wouldn't buy, 4 would stop, 5 had been, 6 had paid, 7 did not/didn't have to, 8 would not/wouldn't make.
- 7** 2 Mother asked Tommy why he was crying.  
3 The woman begged the rich man to lend her some money. 4 Mr Smith told the children not to knock on the door so loudly. 5 The teacher told the students that coffee is grown in Brazil.
- 6 Rick asked me if I could go at four instead of five the following afternoon. 7 The man told the policemen that he had never seen the woman before. 8 Grandpa told/promised Alex that he'd buy him a new toy train for his birthday. 9 I asked what time Paul was coming.  
10 The boss told me to call him as soon as I heard about the results.
- 8** 2 Where does she live? 3 How old is she? 4 What are her favourite hobbies? 5 How often does she go swimming? 6 What do Doris and Peter do every Saturday morning? 7 How do they come home? 8 Why does Peter admire Doris?
- 9** 2 C, 3 A, 4 A, 5 C, 6 B, 7 C, 8 C, 9 C, 10 A.
- 10** 2 The; 3 a, the; 4 the; 5 an; 6 The; 7 a, the, an; 8 An, the; 9 The, a, a; 10 a, the; 11 the; 12 a; 13 an; 14 the.
- 11** 2 the biggest ... in, 3 the sweetest ... of, 4 taller than, 5 more generous than, 6 better than, 7 the youngest ... in, 8 richer than, 9 the most delicious of, 10 the funniest ... in.
- 12** 2 the smallest of; 3 the biggest of; 4 more, than; 5 more, than; 6 the quietest of; 7 the noisiest of; 8 more, than; 9 fewer, than; 10 better, than.
- 13** 1 somewhere, 2 anywhere, 3 anyone, 4 everyone, 5 some, 6 nobody, 7 something, 8 anything.
- 14** 1 any, 2 no, 3 anything, 4 some, any, 5 everyone, 6 every, 7 somewhere, 8 Nothing, 9 Anyone, 10 No one, 11 everywhere, 12 Nowhere.
- 15** 1 to be, 2 to buy, 3 writing/to write, 4 cycling, 5 go, 6 doing, 7 to see, 8 working.
- 16** 1 Neither John **nor** Sally likes swimming.  
2 I don't want **anything** to eat at the moment.  
3 You **mustn't** run across the road. It's dangerous.  
4 Have you **ever** been to Italy? 5 I **could run** very fast when I was young, but I can't now. 6 Tom was the man **who** helped me paint my house. 7 Sandra **visited** the zoo with her friends yesterday.



# Grammarway 2

Grammarway 2 является второй книгой из четырехуровневой серии иллюстрированных пособий по грамматике английского языка. Книга предназначена для тех, кто уже знаком с основами предмета. В ней систематическим образом отрабатываются и закрепляются грамматические структуры и понятия. Книга может быть использована как для самообразования, так и для занятий в классе в качестве грамматического дополнения к любому курсу английского языка соответствующего уровня

## Эта книга (Student's Book) содержит:

- ясное, простое и наглядное представление грамматических структур,
- исчерпывающее изложение материала в виде таблиц (боксов),
- множество упражнений с пробелами для вписывания ответов,
- упражнения, специально разработанные для того, чтобы помочь учащемуся употреблять корректные и уместные выражения в повседневных ситуациях,
- множество цветных иллюстраций,
- упражнения на исправление ошибок,
- итоговые устные и письменные увлекательные упражнения в конце каждого раздела,
- разделы "Повторение",
- словарь,
- ответы к упражнениям.

## Руководство для преподавателя (Teacher's Book) содержит:

- ответы к упражнениям,
- рекомендации по использованию упражнений и подаче материала,
- тесты, которые разрешено копировать.

Дополнительный иллюстративный материал (**Picture Flashcards**) предназначен для живого, стимулирующего представления основных грамматических структур.

## Составляющие комплекта

- Student's Book ISBN 5-93390-005-2 (рус.)  
ISBN 1-903128-91-9 (англ.)
- Teacher's Book
- Picture Flashcards

ISBN 5-93390-005-2



9 785933 190005 4 &gt;

КНИЖНЫЙ МАГАЗИН **МОСКВА**  
5-93390-005-2 304-152-005 181  
Grammarway 2. Практ. пособ. по гр.



2303735  
245.00